



# Milestone XProtect™

## Go 1.0 Manual

**Based on the XProtect Enterprise 7.0  
Administrator's Manual**

**Read the important information on  
page 2**



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## Important Information for Users of XProtect Go

---

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality described here may not apply due to the differences in your version.

### ***Targeted XProtect Go Getting Started Guide***

This manual is meant to help you configure XProtect Go. But it is also meant to give you an idea of the huge flexibility in XProtect Go's sister product, XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Therefore, this manual may be a bit overwhelming if you have just started using XProtect Go.

To get you started with XProtect Go, we recommend reading the short and concise **XProtect Go Getting Started Guide**. The guide covers:

- How you install XProtect Go.
- How you register your version of XProtect Go, so you can use it for more than 30 days.
- How you add your cameras in XProtect Go.
- How you configure some of XProtect Go's key features, such as motion detection.
- How you add users to your XProtect Go system.
- How you view live and recorded video in the Smart Client.

The Getting Started Guide is available with XProtect Go. You can also download it from [www.milestonesys.com](http://www.milestonesys.com).

### ***Differences in XProtect Go***

Compared with the full XProtect Enterprise version described in this manual, XProtect Go has the following differences and limitations:

- Use of XProtect Go requires a Software License Code (SLC), but you do **not** need Device License Keys (DLKs) for the hardware devices (cameras, etc.) you use with XProtect Go.
- Fewer installation options.
- Can be used for 30 days without registration. To use XProtect Go for more than 30 days, you must register it. XProtect Go will remind you of this if necessary.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



- Can be used for one year, after which you must get a new Software License Code. XProtect Go will remind you of this if necessary.
- You can add a maximum of eight hardware devices. Hardware devices may have more than one camera attached (this is often the case with video encoders, a type of hardware devices which allow analog cameras to connect to digital systems), but a maximum of eight cameras can be enabled in XProtect Go at a time.
- Maximum five days of retention time for recordings.
- Not possible to record keyframes only for MPEG.
- Not possible to add DVR (Digital Video Recorder) hardware devices.
- No master/slave functionality.
- No SMS (mobile text) notifications, and consequently no SMS notification scheduling.
- One-way audio only (incoming audio recorded by microphones attached to cameras). Only one audio source can be enabled at a time.
- No ability to add Windows users from Active Directory® (but you can still add Windows users who have been defined locally on the XProtect Go server).
- Configuration of PTZ (Pan/Tilt/Zoom) cameras is limited to 25 preset positions. PTZ patrolling (continuous movement of a PTZ camera between preset positions) is not possible, and consequently there is no PTZ patrolling scheduling.
- No generic events (highly flexible events based on analysis of incoming UDP or TCP data packages):
- Only possible to archive to local drives on the computer running XProtect Go.
- Support via online forum only.
- Not possible to use XProtect Go with XProtect Central (add-on product for alarm center management).
- No Remote Client.
- No PDA Server and PDA Client.
- No Viewer.
- No Matrix Monitor.
- No Download Manager.
- XProtect Go comes with a Smart Client, but the following limitations apply in the Smart Client:
  - Only one Smart Client can be connected to XProtect Go at a time.
  - No Smart Search (feature for searching for motion in one or more selected areas of recordings from particular cameras).

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



- No ability to export video evidence in database format or as still images in JPEG format.
- AVI export format will prominently display a Milestone logo in exported video evidence.
- No ability to use floating windows or multiple monitors.
- No Matrix video sharing or controllable carousels (carousels let you view video from several cameras one after the other in the same window).
- One-way audio only (incoming audio recorded by microphones attached to cameras), and only from one audio source at a time (audio source in question is defined on the XProtect Go server).
- Limited functionality for PTZ (Pan/Tilt/Zoom) cameras.

**Tip:** The Smart Client has its own user's manual and a built-in help system (but remember the feature limitations listed here when you use the Smart Client with XProtect Go).

XPGO10-am-4(a4)-090211

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



# Copyright, Trademarks & Disclaimer

---

## Copyright

© 2011 Milestone Systems A/S.

## Trademarks

XProtect is a registered trademark of Milestone Systems A/S.

Microsoft® and Windows® are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

All other trademarks mentioned in this document are trademarks of their respective owners.

## Disclaimer

This document is intended for general information purposes only, and due care has been taken in its preparation.

Any risk arising from the use of this information rests with the recipient, and nothing herein should be construed as constituting any kind of warranty.

Milestone Systems A/S reserve the right to make adjustments without prior notification.

All names of people and organizations used in this document's examples are fictitious. Any resemblance to any actual organization or person, living or dead, is purely coincidental and unintended.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



# Contents

---

## IMPORTANT INFORMATION FOR XPROTECT GO USERS2

- Targeted XProtect Go Getting Started Guide..... 2
- Differences in XProtect Go ..... 2

## INTRODUCTION..... 14

## SYSTEM & REQUIREMENTS..... 16

- Minimum System Requirements ..... 16
- Administrator Rights ..... 19
- Important Port Numbers ..... 19
- Virus Scanning..... 20
- Time Server ..... 20

## INSTALLATION ..... 21

- Upgrade from a Previous Version ..... 22

## GET YOUR SYSTEM UP AND RUNNING ..... 25

- Access the Management Application ..... 27

## MANAGEMENT APPLICATION..... 28

- Password Protection..... 28
- Apply/Save Configuration Changes ..... 28
- Change/Reset Behavior ..... 29

## WIZARDS ..... 30

- Add Hardware Devices Wizard ..... 30

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



Express Method .....	31
Advanced Method .....	34
Manual Method .....	37
Import from CSV File Method .....	39
CSV File Format and Requirements .....	39
<b>Configure Video and Recording Wizard .....</b>	<b>43</b>
Video Settings and Preview .....	43
Online Schedule.....	44
Live and Recording Settings (Motion-JPEG Cameras) .....	44
Live and Recording Settings (MPEG Cameras) .....	46
Drive Selection .....	47
Recording and Archiving Settings.....	49
<b>Adjust Motion Detection Wizard .....</b>	<b>49</b>
Exclude Regions .....	50
Motion Detection .....	50
<b>Configure User Access Wizard .....</b>	<b>51</b>
Server Access Settings .....	52
Basic and Windows Users.....	52
Access Summary .....	53
<b>Replace Hardware Device Wizard .....</b>	<b>53</b>
New Hardware Device Information .....	54
Database Action .....	55
 <b>LICENSES .....</b>	 <b>57</b>
Import DLKs (Device License Keys) .....	57
Specify a New SLC (Software License Code) .....	57
 <b>HARDWARE DEVICES.....</b>	 <b>58</b>
<b>Configuration.....</b>	<b>58</b>
Name & Video Channels.....	58
Network, Device Type & License .....	59
PTZ Device .....	59
Fisheye.....	60

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



<b>Use DVR (Digital Video Recorder) Devices .....</b>	<b>60</b>
<b>Use Dedicated Input/Output Devices .....</b>	<b>61</b>
<b>Replace a Hardware Device .....</b>	<b>61</b>
<b>Delete a Hardware Device.....</b>	<b>61</b>

## **CAMERAS AND RECORDINGS ..... 63**

<b>General Recording and Storage Configuration .....</b>	<b>63</b>
Recording & Archiving Paths.....	63
Dynamic Path Selection .....	65
Video Recording .....	66
Manual Recording .....	68
Frame Rate – MJPEG .....	68
Frame Rate – MPEG .....	70
Audio Selection.....	72
Audio Recording .....	72
Storage Information.....	73
<b>Camera-specific Configuration .....</b>	<b>74</b>
Camera .....	74
Frame Rate .....	75
Video .....	76
Audio .....	77
Recording Settings.....	77
Recording & Archiving Paths.....	78
Event Notification .....	80
Output .....	80
Motion Detection & Exclude Regions.....	81
Fisheye.....	83
PTZ Preset Positions.....	84
PTZ Patrolling.....	86
Patrolling Profiles .....	87
Preset Positions to Use in Patrolling Profiles.....	87
Wait and Transition Timing.....	88
PTZ Scanning .....	88
Pause and Resume PTZ Patrolling .....	88



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



PTZ on Event .....	89
<b>Configure When Cameras Should Do What .....</b>	<b>90</b>
<b>View Video in Management Application .....</b>	<b>90</b>
<b>Monitor Storage Space Usage .....</b>	<b>91</b>
<b>Database Resizing .....</b>	<b>91</b>
<b>Disable or Delete a Camera .....</b>	<b>91</b>
 <b>ARCHIVING .....</b>	 <b>92</b>
<b>Benefits of Archiving .....</b>	<b>92</b>
<b>How Archiving Works .....</b>	<b>92</b>
Dynamic Path Selection for Archives .....	93
Archiving Audio .....	94
Viewing Archived Recordings .....	94
Storage Capacity Required for Archiving .....	95
Backing Up Archives .....	95
Automatic Response if Running Out of Disk Space .....	95
New Database if Archiving Fails .....	97
Virus Scanning and Archiving .....	98
<b>Configure Archiving Locations .....</b>	<b>98</b>
<b>Configure Archiving Schedules .....</b>	<b>99</b>
 <b>AUDIO .....</b>	 <b>100</b>
<b>Configure Microphones .....</b>	<b>100</b>
<b>Configure Speakers .....</b>	<b>101</b>
 <b>SCHEDULING .....</b>	 <b>102</b>
<b>Configure General Scheduling and Archiving .....</b>	<b>102</b>
Scheduling All Cameras .....	102
Scheduling Options .....	103
Archiving .....	104
<b>Configure Camera-specific Scheduling .....</b>	<b>104</b>
Online Period .....	105

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



Speedup .....	106
E-mail Notification .....	107
SMS Notification .....	108
PTZ Patrolling.....	108
 <b>E-MAIL AND SMS (MOBILE TEXT) .....</b>	<b>110</b>
Configure E-mail Notifications .....	110
Configure SMS Notifications.....	112
 <b>EVENTS, INPUT AND OUTPUT .....</b>	<b>114</b>
Configure General Event Handling .....	115
Add a Hardware Input Event.....	116
Add a Manual Event .....	117
Add a Generic Event.....	119
Test a Generic Event .....	122
Add a Timer Event .....	123
Add a Hardware Output .....	124
Configure Hardware Output on Event .....	125
 <b>SERVICES .....</b>	<b>127</b>
Start and Stop Services .....	127
 <b>MASTER AND SLAVE SERVERS .....</b>	<b>128</b>
 <b>CLIENT ACCESS TO SURVEILLANCE SYSTEM.....</b>	<b>130</b>
Wizard-driven Configuration.....	130
Advanced Configuration.....	130
Server Access.....	130
Local IP Ranges .....	131
Language Support & XML.....	131

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



<b>USERS .....</b>	<b>133</b>
<b>Wizard-driven Configuration.....</b>	<b>133</b>
<b>Advanced Configuration.....</b>	<b>133</b>
Add Basic Users.....	133
Add Windows Users.....	134
Add User Groups .....	135
Configure User and Group Rights .....	136
<b>User and Group Properties.....</b>	<b>136</b>
 <b>LOGGING .....</b>	 <b>139</b>
<b>Configure System, Event, and Audit Logging .....</b>	<b>140</b>
<b>Log Integrity Checks.....</b>	<b>141</b>
 <b>CENTRAL .....</b>	 <b>143</b>
 <b>MATRIX VIDEO SHARING .....</b>	 <b>144</b>
<b>Configure Matrix for Manual Video Sharing.....</b>	<b>144</b>
<b>Configure Matrix for Automatic Video Sharing .....</b>	<b>145</b>
 <b>SYSTEM .....</b>	 <b>148</b>
<b>Find Version and Plug-in Information .....</b>	<b>148</b>
<b>Configure Default File Paths .....</b>	<b>148</b>
<b>Restore System Configuration from Restore Point.....</b>	<b>149</b>
<b>Export and Import System Configuration as Backup or Clone.....</b>	<b>150</b>
<b>Import Changes to Configuration.....</b>	<b>151</b>
CSV File Format and Requirements .....	151
<b>Back Up System Configuration.....</b>	<b>155</b>
<b>Handle Daylight Saving Time .....</b>	<b>157</b>
<b>Improve Stability with 3 GB Operating System Virtual Memory .....</b>	<b>157</b>
<b>Protect Recording Databases from Corruption .....</b>	<b>160</b>

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## **DRIVERS ..... 162**

### **Update Video Device Drivers..... 162**

## **CLIENTS AND ANCILLARY APPLICATIONS..... 163**

### **Smart Client..... 165**

Install Smart Client from Server ..... 165

Install Smart Client form DVD ..... 165

Install Smart Client Silently..... 166

### **Remote Client ..... 167**

### **PDA Server and Client..... 168**

Install and Configure PDA Server ..... 168

Install and Configure PDA Client ..... 172

### **Download Manager ..... 175**

Default Configuration ..... 176

Make New Features Available to Users..... 177

Hide or Remove Features..... 178

Virus Scanning ..... 179

### **Recording Server Manager..... 179**

### **Matrix Monitor ..... 180**

### **Viewer ..... 181**

## **REMOVAL..... 182**

### **Remove the Entire Surveillance System..... 182**

### **Remove Individual Components ..... 182**

Remove the Surveillance Server Software ..... 182

Remove the Download Manager..... 183

Remove Installation Files for End-User Features ..... 183

Remove the Viewer..... 183

Remove the Smart Client..... 183

Remove the PDA Server ..... 184

Remove the PDA Client..... 184

Remove Video Device Drivers..... 184

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



**BUILT-IN HELP SYSTEM..... 186**

**INDEX ..... 187**

**APPENDIX: HARDWARE DRIVER IDS ..... 194**

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## Introduction

---

With the purchase of XProtect Enterprise you have chosen an extremely powerful, flexible and intelligent surveillance solution. XProtect Enterprise provides a state-of-the-art IP video surveillance system, supporting the widest choice of network cameras and video encoders, with the equipment connected to an office LAN or other TCP/IP network, such as the internet.

XProtect Enterprise is the perfect choice for large installations. XProtect Enterprise handles an unlimited number of cameras (up to 64 simultaneously used cameras per server), multiple servers and multiple sites. It is a top performance solution, well suited to the sophisticated high-end of the security market. XProtect Enterprise is:

- **Scalable**; with support for multiple servers, sites and clients, allowing you to design the system to fit your organization.
- **Compatible** with more than 850 different IP-based video camera and encoder products—and the number is growing.
- **Dependable**; with robust and stable performance proven in operation on more than 50000 customer installations worldwide.
- **High-performing**; with high performance achieved on standard computer equipment by using powerful multi-threaded technology.
- **Flexible**; with remote access features that let you use the surveillance system from any location at any time, using a desktop computer, laptop or PDA.
- **Ideal** for fast export and delivery of authentic video proof to authorities or for internal investigations.
- **Licensed per video channel**; allowing you to grow your installation incrementally along with your needs.
- **Future-safe**; the IP approach is the foundation of tomorrow—available today. Ongoing product enhancements give you long-term returns on your surveillance investment.
- **Open architecture**; with IP technology and a versatile API/SDK providing limitless integration possibilities, for example for access control systems, video analytics, PoS or ATM systems, alarms, gate barriers, etc.

## Several Targeted Components in One

XProtect Enterprise consists of a number of components, each targeted at specific tasks and user types:

- **The Management Application:** The main application used by surveillance system administrators for configuring the XProtect Enterprise surveillance system server, upon installation or whenever configuration adjustments are required, for example when adding new cameras or users to the system. Read more about the Management Application on page 28.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



- **The Recording Server service:** A vital part of the surveillance system; video streams are only transferred to XProtect Enterprise while the Recording Server service is running. The Recording Server service is automatically installed and runs in the background on the XProtect Enterprise surveillance system server. You can manage the service through the Management Application. Read more about the Recording Server service on page 127.
- **The Image Server service:** Handles access to the surveillance system for users logging in with clients. The Image Server service is automatically installed and runs in the background on the XProtect Enterprise surveillance system server. You can manage the service through the Management Application. Read more about the Image Server service on page 127.
- **The Download Manager:** Lets you manage which XProtect Enterprise-related features your organization's users will be able to access from a targeted welcome page on the surveillance system server. Read more about the Download Manager on page 175.
- **The Remote Client and Smart Client:** Choice of two types of client, each providing users with intuitive access to the surveillance system. The Remote Client and Smart Client let users view live video, play back recorded video, activate output, print and export evidence, etc. The Remote Client is accessed straight from the surveillance system server through a browser. The extra feature-rich Smart Client should always be downloaded and installed on remote users' computers. Read more about the Remote Client and Smart Client on page 163.
- **The PDA Client and PDA Server:** Enable client access to the surveillance system via a PDA (Personal Digital Assistant; a hand-held computer device) with a wireless connection. Read more about the PDA Client and PDA Server on page 163.

## Updates

Milestone Systems regularly release service updates for our products, offering improved functionality and support for new devices. If you are a surveillance system administrator, it is recommended that you check [www.milestonesys.com](http://www.milestonesys.com) for updates at regular intervals in order to make sure you are using the most recent version of your surveillance software.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## System & Requirements

---

### Minimum System Requirements

The following are *minimum* system requirements for running XProtect Enterprise and associated applications. Visit the Milestone website, [www.milestonesys.com](http://www.milestonesys.com), for the most recent system performance parameters.

**Tip:** DirectX is a software requirement for several of the components listed in the following. To check which DirectX version is installed on a computer, click *Start*, select *Run...*, and type *dxdiag*. When you click *OK*, the *DirectX Diagnostic Tool* window will open; version information is displayed near the bottom of its *System* tab. Should the server require a DirectX update, the latest versions of DirectX are available from <http://www.microsoft.com/downloads/>.

### Surveillance System Server

<b>Operating System</b>	Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional (32 bit or 64 bit*), Windows Server 2003 (32 bit or 64 bit*), Windows Server 2008 R1/R2 (32 bit or 64 bit*), Windows Vista™ Business (32 bit or 64 bit*), Windows Vista Enterprise (32 bit or 64 bit*), Windows Vista Ultimate (32 bit or 64 bit*), Windows 7 Professional (32 bit or 64 bit*), Windows 7 Enterprise (32 bit or 64 bit*) or Windows 7 Ultimate (32 bit or 64 bit*).
<b>CPU</b>	Intel® Pentium® 4, 2.4 GHz or higher (Core™ 2 recommended).
<b>RAM</b>	Minimum 1 GB (2 GB or more recommended).
<b>Network</b>	Ethernet (1 Gbit recommended).
<b>Graphics Adapter</b>	AGP or PCI-Express, minimum 1024 x 768, 16 bit colors.
<b>Hard Disk Type</b>	E-IDE, PATA, SATA, SCSI, SAS (7200 RPM or faster).
<b>Hard Disk Space</b>	Minimum 1 GB free hard disk space available, excluding space needed for recordings.
<b>Software</b>	Microsoft .NET 3.5 Framework Service Pack 1 or newer. DirectX 9.0 or newer required if wishing to run the Viewer application. Windows Help (WinHlp32.exe). All are downloadable from <a href="http://www.microsoft.com/downloads/">http://www.microsoft.com/downloads/</a> .

\* Running as a 32 bit service/application.

### Smart Client

<b>Operating System</b>	Microsoft Windows XP Professional (32 bit or 64 bit*), Windows Server 2003 (32 bit or 64 bit*), Windows Server 2008 R1/R2 (32 bit or 64 bit*), Windows Vista Business (32 bit or 64 bit*), Windows Vista Enterprise (32 bit or 64 bit*), Windows Vista Ultimate (32 bit or 64 bit*), Windows 7 Professional (32 bit or 64 bit*), Windows 7 Enterprise (32 bit or 64 bit*) or Windows 7 Ultimate (32 bit or 64 bit*).
<b>CPU</b>	Intel Core2™ Duo, minimum 2.4 GHz or higher (more powerful CPU recommended for Smart Clients running high number of cameras and



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



	multiple views and displays).
<b>RAM</b>	Minimum 1 GB (higher RAM recommended for Smart Clients running high number of cameras and multiple views and displays).
<b>Network</b>	Ethernet (100 Mbit or higher recommended).
<b>Graphics Adapter</b>	AGP or PCI-Express, minimum 1024 x 768 (1280 x 1024 recommended), 16 bit colors.
<b>Hard Disk Space</b>	Minimum 100 MB free.
<b>Software</b>	Microsoft .NET 3.5 Framework Service Pack 1 or newer. DirectX 9.0 or newer.

\* Running as a 32 bit service/application.

## Remote Client

<b>Operating System</b>	Microsoft Windows XP Professional (32 bit or 64 bit*), Windows Server 2003 (32 bit or 64 bit*), Windows Server 2008 R1/R2 (32 bit or 64 bit*), Windows Vista Business (32 bit or 64 bit*), Windows Vista Enterprise (32 bit or 64 bit*) and Windows Vista Ultimate (32 bit or 64 bit*), Windows 7 Professional (32 bit or 64 bit*), Windows 7 Enterprise (32 bit or 64 bit*) or Windows 7 Ultimate (32 bit or 64 bit*).
<b>CPU</b>	Intel Pentium 4, 2.4 GHz or higher.
<b>RAM</b>	Minimum 1 GB (2 GB or higher recommended on Microsoft Windows Vista).
<b>Network</b>	Ethernet (100 Mbit or higher recommended).
<b>Graphics Adapter</b>	AGP or PCI-Express, minimum 1024 x 768 (1280 x 1024 recommended), 16 bit colors.
<b>Hard Disk Space</b>	Minimum 10 MB free.
<b>Software</b>	DirectX 9.0 or newer.

\* Running as a 32 bit service/application.

## PDA Server

The *PDA Server* is typically installed on the surveillance system server; see the system requirements for the surveillance system server. Note, however, that to run the *PDA Server* the following is required on the surveillance system server:

- Microsoft Windows XP Professional (32 bit or 64 bit\*) or Windows Server 2003 (32 bit or 64 bit\*)  
\* Running as a 32 bit service/application.
- Internet Information Services (IIS) 5.1 or later
- Microsoft .NET Framework 2.0.

Note that later versions of .NET Framework may also be present on the server. If .NET Framework 2.0 as well as one or more later versions are present on the server, Windows' default settings may cause a later .NET Framework version to be used instead of .NET Framework 2.0. To verify/change which .NET Framework version is used, do the following:

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



1. Click *Start* and select *Control Panel*.
2. Click *Administrative Tools*.
3. Click *Internet Information Services*.
4. In the *Internet Information Services* window's left pane, locate and right-click the *Default Web Site* item.
5. In the resulting menu, select *Properties*. This will open the *Default Web Site Properties* dialog.
6. Select the dialog's *ASP.NET* tab. The .NET Framework in use will be indicated in the *ASP.NET version* field.
7. If required, change the *ASP.NET version* to *2.0.50727*.
8. Click *OK*.
9. Close the *Internet Information Services* and *Administrative Tools* windows if still open.

## PDA Client

<b>Operating System</b>	Microsoft Windows Pocket PC 2003/2003 SE/Mobile 5.0.
<b>CPU</b>	Intel StrongARM® or 100% compatible.
<b>RAM</b>	Minimum 32 MB.
<b>Network</b>	Ethernet (256 Kbit or higher recommended)
<b>Graphics Adapter</b>	Minimum 320 x 200, 16 bit colors.
<b>Software</b>	Microsoft Windows Pocket PC 2003/2003 SE/Mobile 5.0.

## Matrix Monitor

Matrix Monitor is a dedicated application for viewing Matrix-triggered video from the XProtect Enterprise surveillance system. Apart from a few features that are unique to the Matrix Monitor, the Smart Client offers near-identical possibilities for viewing Matrix-triggered video.

<b>Operating System</b>	Microsoft Windows XP Professional (32 bit or 64 bit*) and Windows Server 2003 (32 bit or 64 bit*), Windows Vista Business (32 bit or 64 bit*), Windows Vista Enterprise (32 bit or 64 bit*) and Windows Vista Ultimate (32 bit or 64 bit*).
<b>CPU</b>	Intel Pentium 4, 2.4 GHz or higher.
<b>RAM</b>	Minimum 512 MB (1 GB recommended on Microsoft Windows Vista).
<b>Network</b>	Ethernet (100 Mbit or higher recommended).
<b>Graphics Adapter</b>	AAGP or PCI-Express, minimum 1024 x 768, 16 bit colors.
<b>Hard Disk Space</b>	Minimum 50 MB free.
<b>Software</b>	DirectX 9.0 or newer

\* Running as a 32 bit service/application.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## ***Administrator Rights***

When you install XProtect Enterprise it is important that you have administrator rights on the computer that should run XProtect Enterprise. If you only have standard user rights, you will not be able to configure the surveillance system. Consult your IT system administrator if in doubt about your rights.

## ***Important Port Numbers***

XProtect Enterprise uses particular ports when communicating with other computers, cameras, etc.

**What is a port?** A port is a logical endpoint for data traffic. Networks use different ports for different types of data traffic. Therefore it is sometimes, but not always, necessary to specify which port to use for particular data communication. Most ports are used automatically based on the types of data included in the communication. On TCP/IP networks, port numbers range from 0 to 65536, but only ports 0 to 1024 are reserved for particular purposes. For example, port 80 is used for HTTP traffic when viewing web pages.

When using XProtect Enterprise, make sure that the following ports are open for data traffic on your network:

- **Port 20 and 21 (inbound and outbound):** Used for FTP traffic. FTP (File Transfer Protocol) is a standard for exchanging files across networks. FTP uses the TCP/IP standards for data transfer, and is often used for uploading or downloading files to and from servers.
- **Port 25 (inbound and outbound):** Used for SMTP traffic. SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol) is a standard for sending e-mail messages between servers. This port should be open since, depending on configuration, some cameras may send images to the surveillance system server via e-mail.
- **Port 80 (inbound and outbound):** Used for HTTP traffic between the surveillance server and cameras, Remote Client and/or Smart Client, and the default communication port for the surveillance system's Image Server service. HTTP (HyperText Transfer Protocol) is a standard for exchanging files across networks; widely used for formatting and transmission of data on the world wide web.
- **Port 554 (inbound and outbound):** Used for RSTP traffic in connection with H.264 video streaming.
- **Port 1024 and above (outbound only):** Used for HTTP traffic between cameras and the surveillance server.
- **Port 1234 (inbound and outbound):** Used for event handling.
- **Port 1237 (inbound and outbound):** Used for communication with the XProtect Central add-on product (if used by your organization)
- Any other port numbers you may have selected to use, for example if you have changed the server access port (see page 130) from its default port number (80) to another port number.

Consult the administrator of your organization's firewall if in doubt about how to open ports for traffic.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## ***Virus Scanning***

Virus scanning on the XProtect Enterprise server, and computers to which data is archived, should if possible be avoided:

- If you are using virus scanning software on the XProtect Enterprise server, or on a computer to which data is archived (see page 92), it is likely that the virus scanning will use a considerable amount of system resources on scanning all the data which is being archived. This may affect system performance negatively. Also, virus scanning software may temporarily lock each file it scans, which may further impact system performance negatively.
- Likewise, virus scanning software on the XProtect Enterprise server is likely to use a considerable amount of system resources on scanning data used by the Download Manager (see page 175).

If allowed in your organization, you should therefore disable any virus scanning of affected areas (such as camera databases, etc.) on the XProtect Enterprise server as well as on any archiving destinations.

## ***Time Server***

All video is time-stamped by XProtect Enterprise upon reception, but since cameras are separate units which may have separate timing devices, power supplies, etc., camera time and XProtect Enterprise system time may not correspond fully, and this may occasionally lead to confusion.

If supported by your cameras, we thus recommend you auto-synchronize camera and system time through a time server for consistent synchronization.

For information about configuring a time server searching [www.microsoft.com](http://www.microsoft.com) for *time server*, *time service*, or similar.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



# Installation

---

This chapter covers installation/upgrade of the XProtect Enterprise server. For information about installing clients, etc., see the separate manuals for each application.

Do not install XProtect Enterprise on a mounted drive (that is a drive attached to an empty folder on an NTFS (NT File System) volume, with a label or name instead of a drive letter). If using mounted drives, critical system features may not work as intended; you will, for example, not receive any warnings if the system runs out of disk space.

**Prerequisites:** Shut down any existing surveillance software. If upgrading, read Upgrade from a Previous Version (below) first.

1. Insert the XProtect Enterprise software DVD, wait for a short while, click the XProtect Enterprise installation link, and then select required language. Alternatively, if you are installing a version downloaded from the internet, run the downloaded installation file from the location you have saved it to.

Depending on your security settings, you may receive one or more security warnings (such as *Do you want to run or save this file?*, *Do you want to run this software?* or similar). When this is the case, click the *Run* button.

2. When the installation wizard starts, click *Next* to continue.
3. Read and accept the End User License Agreement, then click *Next*.
4. If an earlier XProtect Enterprise version (6.0a or later) is present on the server, you will be asked to accept that it is automatically removed during installation of the new version. The automatic removal will not delete any existing recordings or configuration. If asked, we recommend answering *Yes*, since this will ensure that old versions will not interfere with your new version.

Versions earlier than 6.0 must be removed manually before installing the new version.

5. Select *Typical* installation and follow the instructions (advanced users may select *Custom* installation, and choose which features to install and where to install them).
6. Select *Install licensed version*. Specify your user name, organization, and Software License Code (SLC; printed on your Product License Sheet). When ready, click *Next*.
7. Click the *Install* button to begin the software installation. During the process, all the necessary components will be installed one after the other.
8. Click *Finish* on the last step to complete the installation.

If a *Status Information* window appears on your screen during installation, simply click its *OK* button. The window simply provides a summary of your installation.

When installation is complete, you can begin configuring your XProtect Enterprise through its Management Application: Double-click the Management Application desktop shortcut or select *Start > All Programs > Milestone XProtect Enterprise > Management Application*. See more in Get Your System Up & Running on page 25.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## Upgrade from a Previous Version

Upgrading XProtect Enterprise is an easy task, and you need not worry about spending hours reconfiguring your software. The following information applies if upgrading from one XProtect Enterprise version to another as well as if upgrading to XProtect Enterprise from a lower product in the XProtect product portfolio.

### Prerequisites

Take note of your SLC (Software License Code). The SLC will change when the software version number changes. If your SLC has changed, so have your DLKs (Device License Keys). You get DLKs (Device License Keys) as part of the software registration process on the Milestone website, [www.milestonesys.com](http://www.milestonesys.com). Upon registration, all your DLKs are sent to you as a single .dlk file attached to an e-mail. Often, your XProtect Enterprise vendor will take care of the process for you. When you have installed the new version of XProtect Enterprise, you should import the new DLK file as described later.

### Back Up Your Current Configuration

When you install the new version of XProtect Enterprise, it will inherit the configuration from your old version. However, we recommend that you make regular backups of your server configuration as a disaster recovery measure. Upgrading your server is no exception. While it is rare to lose your configuration (cameras, schedules, views, etc), it *can* happen under unfortunate circumstances. Luckily, it takes only a minute to back up your existing configuration:

The following describes backup of XProtect Enterprise versions prior to 7.0, which is the most likely need when upgrading to version 7.0. If you need information about how to back up your XProtect Enterprise 7.0 configuration, see page 155.

1. Create a folder called *Backup* on a network drive, or on removable media.
2. On the XProtect Enterprise server, open *My Computer*, and navigate to C:\Program Files\Milestone\Milestone Surveillance.
3. Copy the following files and folders into your *Backup* folder:
  - All configuration (.ini) files
  - All scheduling (.sch) files
  - The file *users.txt* (only present in a few installations)
  - The folder *SmartClientViewGroups* and all of its content
  - The folder *RemoteClientViewGroups* and all of its content

Note that some of the files/folders may not exist if upgrading from old software versions.

### Remove the Current Version

In most cases, you do not need to manually remove the old version of XProtect Enterprise before you install the new version. The old version is removed when you install the new version. Note,

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



however, that versions earlier than 6.0 must be removed manually before installing the new version.

## Install the New Version

Run the installation file for the new software version. Select the installation options that best fit your needs.

## Import the New DLKs

1. Open the Management Application.
2. In the Management Application's *File* menu, select *Import DLKs...*
3. Browse to the location at which you have saved the received .dlk file, select the file, and click *Open*. All the new DLKs are now imported into XProtect Enterprise.

## Restore a Configuration Backup (if Required)

If for some reason after installing the new software version you have lost your configuration, you can restore your configuration, provided you have followed the previous instructions. Since configuration is stored in a new format in XProtect Enterprise 7.0, your backed-up configuration must be converted to the new format before you can use it. Contact your Milestone vendor for information about how to convert and restore your configuration backup.

## Upgrade Video Device Drivers

Video device drivers are small programs used for controlling/communicating with the hardware devices connected to an XProtect Enterprise system. Video device drivers are installed automatically during the installation of your XProtect Enterprise system. However, new versions of the video device drivers—so-called Device Packs—are released and made available for free on [www.milestonesys.com](http://www.milestonesys.com) from time to time.

We therefore recommend that you regularly visit the Milestone website (look under *Support > Downloads*) and download the latest Device Pack. When updating video device drivers, there is no need to remove the old video device drivers first; simply install the latest version on top of any old version you may have. For detailed information, see page 162.

## Upgrade Smart Clients

Smart Client users should now remove their old Smart Client versions and install the new one:

1. On the required computers, open Windows' *Add or Remove Programs* dialog (*Start > Control Panel > Add or Remove Programs*).
2. In the *Add or Remove Programs* dialog, select the Milestone XProtect Smart Client entry, and click the *Remove* button. A wizard window will open. Follow the wizard's steps, and click *Finish* when ready.
3. Now open a browser and connect to XProtect Enterprise at the following address:

`http://[IP address or hostname of server]:[port number; default is 80]`

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



Example: <http://123.123.123.123:80>

4. From the welcome page that appears, download and install the latest Smart Client version.
5. If required, download and install any Smart Client plugins needed.



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## Get Your System Up and Running

---

The following outlines the tasks typically involved in setting up a working XProtect Enterprise system. Note that although information is presented as a checklist, a completed checklist does not in itself guarantee that the system will match the exact needs of your organization. To make the system match the needs of your organization, it is highly recommended that you monitor and adjust the system once it is running.

For example, it is often a very good idea to spend time on testing and adjusting the motion detection sensitivity settings for individual cameras under different physical conditions (day/night, windy/calm, etc.) once the system is running.

**Tip:** Check the boxes in this checklist as you go along.



### **Verify Initial Configuration of Cameras and other Hardware Devices**

Before doing anything on XProtect Enterprise, make sure the hardware devices (cameras, video encoders, etc.) you are going to use are correctly installed and configured with IP addresses, passwords, etc. as specified by the manufacturers. Such initial configuration is required in order to be able to connect the devices to the network and XProtect Enterprise.



### **Register Your XProtect Enterprise Software and Get DLKs (This step may not be required; your XProtect Enterprise vendor often takes care of the process for you. If you have received a Device License Key file from your vendor, you can skip this step.)**

You must register your software and get a Device License Key (DLK) for every device (cameras, etc.) you are going to use on your XProtect Enterprise system. Upon registration, all your DLKs are sent to you as a single .dlk file attached to an e-mail.

- Go to [www.milestonesys.com](http://www.milestonesys.com) and click the *Software Registration* link.
- Log in to the online registration system. If you do not yet have a login, click the *New To The System?* link, and follow the instructions. When ready, log in using the registered e-mail address and password. The DLKs will be e-mailed to the e-mail address specified in your login, so it is a good idea to use a single e-mail account for everyone who should be able to retrieve the DLKs.
- If you have not yet registered your SLC (Software License Code; listed on your product license sheet), do so by clicking the *Add SLC* link and completing the SLC registration steps before proceeding.
- When ready, click the link representing your SLC.
- For **each** device required on your system, click the *Add new MAC* link and specify the device's MAC address and a description. The MAC address is a 12 digit hexadecimal (example: 0123456789AF), occasionally called a serial number by some vendors. For information about how to find the MAC address for a specific device, refer to the manual for the device in question.
- For video encoder devices, specify the number of cameras to be used with the device. Remember that you are allowed to install and use only the number of cameras covered by your license agreement; regardless of your number of available DLKs. For example, a fully used four-port video encoder counts as four cameras; it will thus use four licenses even though its four cameras are connected through a single device.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



- Click *Submit*. The device is added to a list of devices under your SLC.
- If more devices are required, click the *Add New MAC* link and repeat the process.
- When ready, click the *Get DLKs by e-mail* link to have DLKs for all the devices registered under your SLC e-mailed to you.

#### ☐ **Install XProtect Enterprise**

See page 21. If upgrading an existing version of XProtect Enterprise, see Upgrade from a Previous Version on page 22.

#### ☐ **Open the Management Application**

See Access the Management Application on page 27.

#### ☐ **Import Your DLKs**

Now it is time to import the Device License Keys into XProtect Enterprise; see page 57.

#### ☐ **Add Hardware Devices in XProtect Enterprise**

XProtect Enterprise can quickly scan your network for relevant hardware devices (cameras, video encoders, etc.), and add them to your system. See page 30.

#### ☐ **Configure Cameras in XProtect Enterprise**

You can specify a wide variety of settings for each camera connected to your XProtect Enterprise system. Settings include video format, resolution, motion detection sensitivity, where to store and archive recordings, any PTZ (Pan/Tilt/Zoom) preset positions, association with microphones and speakers, etc. See page 63.

**What does "... archive recordings" mean?** Archiving—an integrated and automated feature—helps you store recordings beyond the capabilities of XProtect Enterprise's standard database. Archiving thus maximizes storage capacity and minimizes risk. See page 92 for more information.

#### ☐ **Configure Events, Input & Output**

If required, system events, for example based on input from sensors, etc., can be used for automatically triggering actions in XProtect Enterprise. Examples of actions: starting or stopping recording on cameras, switching to a particular video frame rate, making PTZ cameras move to specific preset positions. Events can also be used for activating hardware output, such as lights or sirens. See page 114.

#### ☐ **Configure Scheduling**

When do you want to archive? Do you want some cameras to transfer video to XProtect Enterprise at all times, and other cameras to transfer video only within specific periods of time, or when specific events occur? With the scheduling feature, you can specify this as well as when you want to receive notifications from the system. For PTZ cameras with patrolling (automatic movement between preset positions), you are furthermore able to specify use of specific patrolling profiles for specific periods of time. See Configure General Scheduling & Archiving on page 102 and Configure Camera-specific Scheduling on page 104.

#### ☐ **Configure Clients' Access to XProtect Enterprise**

A number of different client applications (see page 163) is included with XProtect Enterprise. You can specify whether you want clients to access the XProtect Enterprise server from the internet, how many clients you want to be able to connect simultaneously, etc. See page 130.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



☐ **Configure Master/Slave Servers (This step is only required if you want to run several XProtect Enterprise servers together)**

A master/slave setup allows you to combine several XProtect Enterprise servers and thus extend the number of cameras you are able to use beyond the maximum allowed number of cameras for a single server. In such a setup, clients will still have a single point of contact: they connect to the master server but also get access, transparently, to cameras and recordings on the slave servers. See page 128.

☐ **Configure Users**

Now specify who should be able to access your XProtect Enterprise system, and how. Do you want password protection for the Management Application? Who should have client access, and with which rights? If required, you can add users from Active Directory®, thus leveraging your organization's existing user data. See Configure User Access Wizard on page 51, Add Basic Users on page 133, Add Windows Users on page 134, Add User Groups on page 135, and Configure User & Group Rights on page 136.

☐ **Configure the Download Manager**

The Download Manager lets you manage which features users will see on a targeted welcome page when they connect to the XProtect Enterprise server. Such features can include access to client applications, additional client language versions, plugins, etc. See page 175.

**Tip:** The Download Manager comes with a default configuration ensuring that users get access to the Smart Client and Remote Client in the same language as your XProtect Enterprise server without you having to do anything.

The above list represents the configuration steps that most administrators are likely to cover. Additional configuration is of course possible, for example if your organization wants to use the PDA Client solution (see page 163), Matrix video sharing features (see page 144) or similar.

Note that the behavior of the Management Application can be customized (see page 29). Descriptions here are, however, always based on the Management Application's default behavior.

## ***Access the Management Application***

You access the Management Application by double-clicking the *Management Application* desktop shortcut.

Alternatively, use Windows' *Start* menu: *Start > All Programs > Milestone XProtect Enterprise > Management Application*.

Depending on your configuration, access to the Management Application may be password-protected (see page 28).

Read more about the Management Application in the following.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## Management Application

The Management Application is XProtect Enterprise's server-side user interface; all management of your surveillance system is handled here.

You access the Management application by double-clicking the *Management Application* desktop shortcut.

Alternatively, use Windows' Start menu: *Start > All Programs > Milestone XProtect Enterprise > Management Application*.



## Password Protection

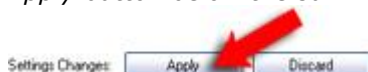
By default, anyone who is able to log in to the XProtect Enterprise server is able to use the Management Application. The reason for this is that such people are likely to have administrator rights. If required, you can password protect access to the Management Application for additional security:

1. In the Management Application's navigation pane, expand *Advanced Configuration*, expand *Users*, right-click *Administrator*, and select *Properties*.
2. Under *Management protection*, select *Enable*.
3. Specify required password, and repeat it to be sure you have specified it correctly. Only use the *Old password* field if changing an existing password or disabling management protection, in which case the old password is required to prove that you have the rights to make the changes.
5. Click *OK*.
6. Save your configuration changes by clicking the *Save Configuration* button in the Management Application's toolbar.

## Apply/Save Configuration Changes

Whenever you make changes in your XProtect Enterprise configuration, you will be asked to apply them:

- If you made the changes in one of the Management Application's dialogs, you simply apply them by clicking *OK*.
- If you made the changes in one of the Management Application's summary tables, click the *Apply* button below the summary table.



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



Applying a configuration change means that the change is stored by XProtect Enterprise in a restore point (so that you can return to a working configuration if something goes wrong; read more on page 149), but **applying a configuration change does not mean that the changes will take immediate effect** on the surveillance system.

- To actually store your configuration change in XProtect Enterprise's configuration file, click the *Save Configuration* button in the Management Application's toolbar (or select *File > Save* from the menu). Your configuration changes will then take effect the next time XProtect Enterprise's services (see page 127) are restarted.
- If you want your configuration changes to have immediate effect, XProtect Enterprise's services must be restarted: Click the *Save Changes and Restart Surveillance Services* button in the Management Application's toolbar (or select *File > Save Changes and Restart Services* from the menu).

**IMPORTANT:** While services are restarted, it will not be possible to view or record video. Restarting the services typically only takes some seconds, but in order to minimize disruption you may want to restart services at a time when you do not expect important incidents. Users connected to XProtect Enterprise through clients will typically remain logged in during the services restart, but they will experience a short video outage.

## Change/Reset Behavior

You can change the way the Management Application behaves. For example, the Management Application will by default ask you to confirm many of your actions. If you find this annoying, you can change the Management Application's behavior, so it will not ask you again.

1. In the Management Application's menu bar, select *Application Settings > Application Behavior...*
2. For each action, you can now select how the Management Application should behave. Examples:
  - When you attempt to delete a hardware device, should the Management Application ask you to confirm that you want to delete the hardware device, or should it delete the hardware device straight away without asking?
  - You can use a maximum of 64 cameras at a time on a single XProtect Enterprise server. If you add more than 64 cameras, should the Management Application warn you or not?

Note that selectable behavior may vary, depending on the type of action

3. Click *OK*.
4. Save your configuration changes by clicking the *Save Configuration* button in the Management Application's toolbar.

**Tip:** You can quickly restore default settings by clicking the button below the behavior list.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## Wizards

---

This chapter describes the wizards that guide you through common tasks in XProtect Enterprise. Wizards are a great advantage, but they typically only cover the most important of XProtect Enterprise's many configuration options. For detailed descriptions of all of XProtect Enterprise's configuration options, see the subsequent chapters in this manual.

- The Add Hardware Devices wizard (see the following) helps you add cameras and other hardware devices, such as video encoders, DVRs, etc., to your XProtect Enterprise system. If microphones and/or speakers are attached to a hardware device, they are automatically added as well.
- The Configure Video and Recording wizard (see page 43) helps you quickly configure your cameras' video and recording properties.
- The Adjust Motion Detection wizard (see page 49) helps you quickly configure your cameras' motion detection properties.
- The Configure User Access wizard (see page 51) helps you quickly configure clients' access to the XProtect Enterprise server as well as which users should be able to use clients.
- Finally, the Replace Hardware wizard (see page 53) helps you replace a hardware device—which you have previously added to and configured on your surveillance system—with a new one. This is relevant if you want to replace a physical camera on your network.

### ***Add Hardware Devices Wizard***

You add cameras and other hardware devices, such as video encoders, DVRs, etc., to your XProtect Enterprise system through the Add Hardware Devices... wizard. If microphones and/or speakers are attached to a hardware device, they are automatically added as well.

You are allowed to use up to 64 cameras per XProtect Enterprise server. Note that, if required, it is possible to *add* more cameras than you are allowed to use. If using video encoder devices on your system, bear in mind that many video encoder devices have more than one camera connected to them. For example, a fully used four-port video encoder will count as four cameras.

Before you begin using the wizard, it is highly recommended that you import your Device License Key file into XProtect Enterprise (see page 57). Importing the file is quick and easy, and it will free you from having to specify license keys manually for each hardware device later.

The wizard offers you four different ways of adding cameras:



- **Express (recommended):** Quickly scans your network for devices, and helps you quickly add them to your system. This method is quick and easy since it only scans for devices supporting device discovery, and only on the part of your network (subnet) where the XProtect Enterprise server itself is located. Device discovery is a method with which hardware devices make information about themselves available on the network. Based on



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



such information, XProtect Enterprise can recognize relevant hardware devices on your network, and thus include, for example, cameras, but not printers, in the scan. To use the Express method, your XProtect Enterprise server and your cameras must be on the same layer 2 network, that is a network where all servers, cameras, etc. can communicate without the need for a router. See page 31.

- **Advanced:** Scans your network for hardware devices based on your specifications regarding required IP ranges, discovery methods, drivers, and device user names and passwords. See page 34.
- **Manual:** Lets you specify details about each hardware device separately. A good choice if you only want to add a few hardware devices, and you know their IP addresses, required user names and passwords, etc. See page 37.
- **Import from CSV file:** Lets you import data about cameras as comma-separated values from a file; an effective method if setting up several similar systems. See page 39.

## Express Method

The Express option scans your network for relevant hardware devices, and helps you quickly add them to your system. With the Express option, the wizard only scans for hardware devices supporting device discovery, and only on the part of your network (subnet) where the XProtect Enterprise server itself is located.

**What is device discovery?** Device discovery is a method with which hardware devices make information about themselves available on the network. Based on such information, XProtect Enterprise can quickly recognize relevant hardware devices, such as cameras and video encoders, and include them in the scan.

To use the Express method, **your XProtect Enterprise server and your cameras must be on the same layer 2 network**; that is a network where all servers, cameras, etc. can communicate without the need for a router. The reason for this is that device discovery relies on direct communication between the XProtect Enterprise server and the cameras. If you know that routers are used on your network, use the Advanced method (see page 34) or Manual method (see page 37) instead.

If you are asked for Device Licence Keys (DLKs) when starting the wizard, see page 57.

When using the Express option, the wizard is divided into a number of pages:

### Hardware Detection and Verification

The wizard automatically scans your network for hardware devices, and lists devices real-time as they are detected. All properties on a white background are editable; properties on a **light blue background** cannot be edited.

Wait until the scan is complete. If the scan takes very long, you can stop it with the **Stop Scan** button; the wizard will remember any devices detected up to that point. When the scan is complete:

- Go through the list of detected hardware devices to see if it contains unwanted devices. If it does, clear the check box in the **Use** column for each unwanted device.
- If any hardware devices are missing from the list, verify that the missing hardware devices support device discovery, verify that they are working and connected to the same part of the network as the XProtect Enterprise server, then click the **Rescan** button. If hardware

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



devices detected in the first scan cannot be detected in the second scan, the wizard will still remember them.

- In the **User name** column, select or type the user name required to access the administrator account on each hardware device. The administrator account gives full access, and XProtect Enterprise is going to need that for each hardware device. Many organizations use the hardware device manufacturer's default user names for their hardware devices. If that is the case in your organization, select *<default>* (do not type a manufacturer's default user name as this can be a source of error; trust that XProtect Enterprise will know the manufacturer's default user name). Other typical user names, such as *admin* or *root* are also selectable from the list. If requiring a user name which is not on the list, simply type the required user name.

**Tip:** User names you type yourself will subsequently be added to the list, so you can easily select them later.

- In the **Password** column, specify the password required to access the administrator account on each hardware device. The administrator account gives full access, and XProtect Enterprise is going to need that for each hardware device. If the same password is used for all the hardware devices, use the *Password* field below the list, then click the **Set on All** button (which becomes available when you specify a password in the field).

**Tip:** If in doubt about which password to use, ask yourself: Have you previously used a web page to connect to the hardware device and view video? While you did this, were you also able to configure camera settings, such as resolution, etc.? If you can answer yes to both questions, you were in all likelihood using the hardware device's administrator account, in which case you will also know the password.

**Tip:** If you are still in doubt, look in the Device Pack Release Notes, available from the Downloads section of [www.milestonesys.com](http://www.milestonesys.com). This will show you the administrator account user name for each supported hardware device. For obvious reasons it will not show you the password.

- When you have specified a password for all hardware devices on the list (except unwanted devices), click **Next**. This will verify that all passwords are correct, and mark each device in the **Verified** column. If any hardware devices cannot be verified, make sure you have specified the correct passwords, then click *Next* again.
- If you have valid Device Licence Keys (DLKs) for all the detected hardware devices, the next wizard page will provide you with an overview, and ask you to select names for cameras, etc. If a valid DLK is missing for one or more of the detected hardware devices, the next wizard page will prompt you to supply valid DLKs before you continue.

### **Missing DLKs (if Applicable)**

If a valid Device License Key (DLK) is missing for one or more of the detected hardware devices, the wizard will prompt you to supply valid DLKs.

If so, specify a valid DLK for each listed hardware device, either manually in the **Device License key (DLK)** column or by clicking the **Import DLKs** button to import the DLKs from your .dlk file. Then click **Next**.

**What is a .dlk file?** You get DLKs as part of the software registration process on the Milestone website, [www.milestonesys.com](http://www.milestonesys.com). Upon registration, all your DLKs are sent to you as a single .dlk file attached to an e-mail. Often, your XProtect Enterprise vendor will take care of the process for you; in which case all you have to do is import the .dlk file, then XProtect Enterprise will know the DLKs for all your hardware devices.



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## Overview and Names

On the last page, the wizard provides you with a detailed overview, listing each camera, microphone and/or speaker attached to the hardware devices. All properties on a white background are editable; properties on a **light blue background** cannot be edited.

- All cameras, etc. are by default enabled (selected in the **Enable** column). This means that they are able to communicate with XProtect Enterprise. If required, you can disable individual cameras, microphones or speakers, and thus prevent them from communicating with XProtect Enterprise.
- All cameras, etc. get automatically generated names based on their type plus a number (examples: Camera 1, Microphone 26). Such names are shown in the **Name** column. If required, you change names manually, or select another name format in the **Auto-generated name format** list:
  - **Device type + number:** The default name format.  
Example: Camera 1
  - **Custom text - Device type + number:** Names will consist of a text of your choice (specified in the **Custom text** field) followed by a dash, type information and a number.  
Example: Airport Security - Camera 1
  - **Address - Device type + number:** Names will consist of the hardware device address followed by a dash, type information and a number.  
Example: 10.10.123.73 - Camera 1
  - **Custom text - Address - Device type + number:** Names will consist of a text of your choice (specified in the **Custom text** field) followed by a dash, then the hardware device address followed by a dash, type information and a number.  
Example: Airport Security - 10.10.123.73 - Camera 1
  - **Hardware model - Device type + number:** Names will consist of hardware device model information followed by a dash, type information and a number.  
Example: Axis P1311 - Camera 1
  - **Hardware model - Custom text - Device type + number:** Names will consist of hardware device model information followed by a dash, then a text of your choice (specified in the **Custom text** field), a dash, type information and a number.  
Example: Axis P1311 - Airport Security - Camera 1
  - **Hardware model - Address - Device type + number:** Names will consist of hardware device model information followed by a dash, then the hardware device address, a dash, type information and a number.  
Example: Axis P1311 - 10.10.123.73 - Camera 1

**Tip:** Need other name formats? Remember you can change names manually by overwriting all or parts of them in the **Name** column. If you change camera names manually, remember that camera names must be unique, and must not contain any of the following special characters: < > & ' " \ / : \* ? | [ ]

When ready, click *Finish*.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## Advanced Method

The Advanced option scans your network for relevant hardware devices based on your specifications regarding required IP ranges, discovery methods, drivers, and device user names and passwords. If you are asked for Device Licence Keys (DLKs) when starting the wizard, see page 57.

When using the Advanced option, the wizard is divided into a number of pages. All properties on a white background are editable; properties on a **light blue background** cannot be edited.

### Device Discovery, IP Ranges, Drivers and Authentication

First specify which IP address ranges you want to scan. By default, the wizard suggests scanning the subnet on which the XProtect Enterprise server is located. To add additional ranges, or edit existing ones, click the **Add** or **Edit** button as required, then specify:

- **Start address:** First IP address in required range.
- **End address:** Last IP address in required range. The start and end IP address may be identical, allowing you to only scan for a single hardware device.
- **Use TCP port scanning:** If scanning for hardware devices which support TCP/HTTP—most devices do—keep the check box selected.
- **Perform scanning on port number(s):** Port number(s) on which to scan. If you want to scan on more than one port number, separate them by commas (example: 80,88,90). If you want to scan on a range of port numbers, separate the first and last port number in the range by a colon (example: 80:90 will scan on all ports from 80 up to and including 90). You can also combine individual port numbers and ranges (example: 77,80:90,97,99).

Default is port 80. If your hardware devices are located behind a NAT-enabled router or a firewall, you may need to specify a different port number. When this is the case, also remember to configure the router/firewall so it maps the port and IP addresses used by the hardware devices.

Now select which drivers to use when scanning. By default, XProtect Enterprise will use all known drivers. If your organization only uses certain hardware device makes and/or models, you can achieve faster scanning by selecting only the drives required for those hardware devices. If that is the case, click the **Select...** button, then specify:

- **Detect:** Select drives you want to use when scanning.

**Tip:** The list of drivers is typically very long, and by default all drivers are selected. With the **Select All** and **Clear All** buttons, you can avoid having to select/clear all check boxes manually.

Now you add user name/password combinations required to access the administrator account on each of your hardware devices. The administrator account gives full access, and XProtect Enterprise is going to need that for each hardware device.

- **User name:** Select or type the user name required to access the administrator account on each hardware device. Many organizations use the hardware device manufacturer's default user names for their hardware devices. If that is the case in your organization, select **<default>** (do not type a manufacturer's default user name as this can be a source of error; trust that XProtect Enterprise will know the manufacturer's default user name). Other typical user names, such as *admin* or *root* are also selectable from the list. If requiring a user name which is not on the list, simply type the required user name.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



**Tip:** User names you type yourself will subsequently be added to the list, so you can easily select them later.

- **Password:** Specify the password required to access the administrator account.

If different user name/password combinations are used across your hardware devices, make sure you add all required combinations.

**Tip:** If in doubt about which user name/password to use, ask yourself: Have you previously used a web page to connect to the hardware device and view video? While you did this, were you also able to configure camera settings, such as resolution, etc.? If you can answer yes to both questions, you were in all likelihood using the hardware device's administrator account, in which case you will also know the user name/password.

**Tip:** If you are still in doubt, look in the Device Pack Release Notes, available from the Downloads section of [www.milestonesys.com](http://www.milestonesys.com). This will show you the administrator account user name for each supported hardware device. For obvious reasons it will not show you the password.

- **Add:** Click to add user a name/password combination.

When ready, click *Next*.

## ***Detected and Verified Hardware Devices***

The wizard automatically scans required IP address ranges for hardware devices, and lists detected devices real-time as they are detected.

The scanning takes place in three tempi: first the express method (where the wizard quickly scans for devices supporting device discovery), then two more thorough methods. During the two thorough methods, the wizard continuously shows you which IP address it is scanning (Example: *Now scanning 10.10.75.110*).

Wait until the scan is complete. If the scan takes very long, you can stop it with the **Stop Scan** button; the wizard will remember any devices detected up to that point.

When the scan is complete:

- Go through the list of detected hardware devices to see if it contains unwanted devices. If it does, clear the check box in the **Use** column for each unwanted device.
- If any hardware devices are missing from the list, verify that the missing hardware devices are working and that they are located within the specified IP address ranges, then click the **Rescan** button. If hardware devices detected in the first scan cannot be detected in the second scan, the wizard will still remember them.
- For all detected hardware devices, XProtect Enterprise has verified that user names/passwords are correct, and marked each device in the **Verified** column. If any hardware devices could not be verified, make sure you have specified the correct user names/passwords.
- Click *Next*. If you have valid Device Licence Keys (DLKs) for all the detected hardware devices, the next wizard page will provide you with an overview, and ask you to select names for cameras, etc. If a valid DLK is missing for one or more of the detected hardware devices, the next wizard page will prompt you to supply valid DLKs before you continue.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## Missing DLKs (if Applicable)

If a valid Device License Key (DLK) is missing for one or more of the detected hardware devices, the wizard will prompt you to supply valid DLKs.

If so, specify a valid DLK for each listed hardware device, either manually in the **Device License key (DLK)** column or by clicking the **Import DLKs** button to import the DLKs from your .dlk file. Then click **Next**.

**What is a .dlk file?** You get DLKs as part of the software registration process on the Milestone website, [www.milestonesys.com](http://www.milestonesys.com). Upon registration, all your DLKs are sent to you as a single .dlk file attached to an e-mail. Often, your XProtect Enterprise vendor will take care of the process for you; in which case all you have to do is import the .dlk file, then XProtect Enterprise will know the DLKs for all your hardware devices.

## Overview and Names

On the last page, the wizard provides you with a detailed overview, listing each camera, microphone and/or speaker attached to the hardware devices.

- All cameras, etc. are by default enabled (selected in the **Enable** column). This means that they are able to communicate with XProtect Enterprise. If required, you can disable individual cameras, microphones or speakers, and thus prevent them from communicating with XProtect Enterprise.
- All cameras, etc. get automatically generated names based on their type plus a number (examples: Camera 1, Microphone 26). Such names are shown in the **Name** column. If required, you change names manually, or select another name format in the **Auto-generated name format** list:
  - **Device type + number:** The default name format.  
Example: Camera 1
  - **Custom text - Device type + number:** Names will consist of a text of your choice (specified in the **Custom text** field) followed by a dash, type information and a number.  
Example: Airport Security - Camera 1
  - **Address - Device type + number:** Names will consist of the hardware device address followed by a dash, type information and a number.  
Example: 10.10.123.73 - Camera 1
  - **Custom text - Address - Device type + number:** Names will consist of a text of your choice (specified in the **Custom text** field) followed by a dash, then the hardware device address followed by a dash, type information and a number.  
Example: Airport Security - 10.10.123.73 - Camera 1
  - **Hardware model - Device type + number:** Names will consist of hardware device model information followed by a dash, type information and a number.  
Example: Axis P1311 - Camera 1
  - **Hardware model - Custom text - Device type + number:** Names will consist of hardware device model information followed by a dash, then a text of your choice (specified in the **Custom text** field), a dash, type information and a number.  
Example: Axis P1311 - Airport Security - Camera 1
  - **Hardware model - Address - Device type + number:** Names will consist of hardware device model information followed by a dash, then the hardware device

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



address, a dash, type information and a number.  
Example: Axis P1311 - 10.10.123.73 - Camera 1

**Tip:** Need other name formats? Remember you can change names manually by overwriting all or parts of them in the *Name* column. If you change camera names manually, remember that camera names must be unique, and must not contain any of the following special characters: < > & ' " \ / : \* ? | [ ]

When ready, click *Finish*.

## Manual Method

The Manual option lets you specify details about each hardware device separately. A good choice if you only want to add a few hardware devices, and you know their IP addresses, required user names and passwords, etc.

If you are asked for Device Licence Keys (DLKs) when starting the wizard, see page 57.

When using the Manual option, the wizard is divided into a number of pages:

### **Hardware Device Information, Driver Selection and Verification**

Specify information about each hardware device you want to add. All properties on a white background are editable; properties on a **light blue background** cannot be edited.

- **Use:** Indicates that you want to include the hardware device in the scan. To begin with, leave the box cleared. Provided XProtect Enterprise can find a suitable driver for the hardware device, the *Use* box will automatically be selected later.
- **Address:** IP address or DNS host name of the hardware device.
- **Port:** Port number on which to scan. Default is port 80. If a hardware device is located behind a NAT-enabled router or a firewall, you may need to specify a different port number. When this is the case, also remember to configure the router/firewall so it maps the port and IP address used by the hardware device.
- **User name:** Select or type the user name required to access the administrator account on each hardware device. Many organizations use the hardware device manufacturer's default user names for their hardware devices. If that is the case in your organization, select *<default>* (do not type a manufacturer's default user name as this can be a source of error; trust that XProtect Enterprise will know the manufacturer's default user name). Other typical user names, such as *admin* or *root* are also selectable from the list. If requiring a user name which is not on the list, simply type the required user name.

**Tip:** User names you type yourself will subsequently be added to the list, so you can easily select them later.

- **Password:** Password required for accessing the administrator account. A few hardware devices do not require user name/password for access; if such hardware devices are used in your organization, you can leave the field blank.

**Tip:** If in doubt about which user name/password to use, ask yourself: Have you previously used a web page to connect to the hardware device and view video? While you did this, were you also able to configure camera settings, such as resolution, etc.? If you can answer yes to both questions, you were in all likelihood using the hardware device's administrator account, in which case you will also know the user name/password.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



**Tip:** If you are still in doubt, look in the Device Pack Release Notes, available from the Downloads section of [www.milestonesys.com](http://www.milestonesys.com). This will show you the administrator account user name for each supported hardware device. For obvious reasons it will not show you the password.

- **Hardware Driver:** Ability to select which driver to use with the hardware device. Note that the default option is *Auto-detect hardware type*: XProtect Enterprise can itself find the right driver if you click the **Auto-detect** button.
- **Verified:** Read-only field indicating whether access to the hardware device has been verified. Hardware devices for which you have specified correct address, port, user name and password will be verified immediately if you use the auto-detect method. If you select drivers manually, access will be verified once you click **Next**.

**Tip:** If using the *Auto-detect* feature, you can enter information about other devices while the auto-detection goes on. Example: You enter information about one device, and use auto-detection to find the right driver for that device. While auto-detection for the first device takes place, you begin entering information about a second device. This can speed up things.

## Missing DLKs (if Applicable)

If a valid Device License Key (DLK) is missing for one or more of the detected hardware devices, the wizard will prompt you to supply valid DLKs.

If so, specify a valid DLK for each listed hardware device, either manually in the **Device License key (DLK)** column or by clicking the **Import DLKs** button to import the DLKs from your .dlk file. Then click **Next**.

**What is a .dlk file?** You get DLKs as part of the software registration process on the Milestone website, [www.milestonesys.com](http://www.milestonesys.com). Upon registration, all your DLKs are sent to you as a single .dlk file attached to an e-mail. Often, your XProtect Enterprise vendor will take care of the process for you; in which case all you have to do is import the .dlk file, then XProtect Enterprise will know the DLKs for all your hardware devices.

## Overview and Names

On the last page, the wizard provides you with a detailed overview, listing each camera, microphone and/or speaker attached to the hardware devices.

- All cameras, etc. are by default enabled (selected in the **Enable** column). This means that they are able to communicate with XProtect Enterprise. If required, you can disable individual cameras, microphones or speakers, and thus prevent them from communicating with XProtect Enterprise.
- All cameras, etc. get automatically generated names based on their type plus a number (examples: Camera 1, Microphone 26). Such names are shown in the **Name** column. If required, you change names manually, or select another name format in the **Auto-generated name format** list:
  - **Device type + number:** The default name format.  
Example: Camera 1
  - **Custom text - Device type + number:** Names will consist of a text of your choice (specified in the **Custom text** field) followed by a dash, type information and a number.  
Example: Airport Security - Camera 1



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



- **Address - Device type + number:** Names will consist of the hardware device address followed by a dash, type information and a number.  
Example: 10.10.123.73 - Camera 1
- **Custom text - Address - Device type + number:** Names will consist of a text of your choice (specified in the *Custom text* field) followed by a dash, then the hardware device address followed by a dash, type information and a number.  
Example: Airport Security - 10.10.123.73 - Camera 1
- **Hardware model - Device type + number:** Names will consist of hardware device model information followed by a dash, type information and a number.  
Example: Axis P1311 - Camera 1
- **Hardware model - Custom text - Device type + number:** Names will consist of hardware device model information followed by a dash, then a text of your choice (specified in the *Custom text* field), a dash, type information and a number.  
Example: Axis P1311 - Airport Security - Camera 1
- **Hardware model - Address - Device type + number:** Names will consist of hardware device model information followed by a dash, then the hardware device address, a dash, type information and a number.  
Example: Axis P1311 - 10.10.123.73 - Camera 1

**Tip:** Need other name formats? Remember you can change names manually by overwriting all or parts of them in the *Name* column. If you change camera names manually, remember that camera names must be unique, and must not contain any of the following special characters: < > & ' " \ / : \* ? | [ ]

When ready, click *Finish*.

## Import from CSV File Method

This option lets you import data about hardware devices and cameras as comma-separated values (CSV) from a file; a highly effective method if setting up several similar systems.

First select whether cameras and the XProtect Enterprise server is online (that is having working network connections) or offline.

Then point to the CSV file, and click *Next*.

### CSV File Format and Requirements

The CSV file must have a header line (determining what each value on the subsequent lines is about), and subsequent lines must each contain information about one hardware device only. A minimum of information is always required for each hardware device, but note that the minimum required information is different depending on whether your server and cameras are online or offline.

### Cameras and Server Are Online

If cameras and server are **online**, required information is:

- **HardwareAddress**  
IP address of the hardware device. Required format: IPv4 or IPv6.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



- **HardwarePort**  
Port to use for HTTP communication with the hardware device. Default is port 80.
- **HardwarePassword**  
Password for the hardware device's administrator account. Most organizations use their own passwords rather than device manufacturers' passwords.

## Camera and Server Are Offline

If cameras and server are **offline**, required information is:

- **HardwareAddress**  
IP address of the hardware device. Required format: IPv4 or IPv6.
- **HardwareMacAddress**  
MAC address of the hardware device. Examples of valid MAC address formats: 0011D81187A9, 0011d81187a9, 00:11:D8:11:87:A9, 00-11-D8-11-87-A9
- **HardwareDriverID**  
A numerical ID used for identifying which video device driver to use for the hardware device in question. For information about how to find the right ID for your devices, see the Hardware Driver IDs appendix on page 194.
- **HardwarePort**  
Port to use for HTTP communication with the hardware device. Default is port 80.
- **HardwarePassword**  
Password for the hardware device's administrator account. For security reasons most organizations use their own passwords rather than device manufacturers' passwords.

## Optional Parameters

You can furthermore include these optional parameters, regardless whether cameras and server are online or offline:

- **HardwareUserName** and **HardwarePassword**  
User name for the hardware device's administrator account. If you do not specify a user name, XProtect Enterprise will use the device manufacturer's default user name for each hardware device. Many organizations use the hardware device manufacturers' default user names for their hardware devices. If that is the case in your organization, there is no need to painstakingly type hardware device manufacturers' default user names as this can be a source of error; trust that XProtect Enterprise will know the manufacturers' default user names. Note that you must always specify a password (the *HardwarePassword* parameter) even when it is not necessary to specify user name.

If the extremely rare cases where the user name for a hardware device is [blank], you cannot use the CSV method, since the method interprets no password as "use the hardware device manufacturer's default password." If the user name for a hardware device is [blank], use the wizard's *Manual* method instead; with the *Manual* method you can use a [blank] user name.

- **HardwareDeviceName**  
Name of the hardware device. Name must unique, and must not contain any of the following special characters: < > & ' " \ / : \* ? | [ ]
- **CameraName[number]**  
Name of the camera. Must appear as *CameraName1*, *CameraName2*, etc. in the header line since a hardware device can potentially have more than one camera attached. Names



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



must be unique, and must not contain any of the following special characters: < > & ' " \ / : \* ? | [ ]

- **CameraShortcut[number]**  
Number for keyboard shortcut access to the camera in the Smart Client. Must appear as *CameraShortcut1*, *CameraShortcut2*, etc. in the header line since a hardware device can potentially have more than one camera attached. A camera shortcut number must not contain any letters or special characters, and must not be longer than eight digits.
- **PreBufferLength[optional number]**  
Required length (in seconds) of pre-recording. If specified as, for example, *PreBufferLength1*, information relates to a specific camera, otherwise to all cameras attached to the hardware device.
- **PostBufferLength[optional number]**  
Required length (in seconds) of post-recording. If specified as, for example, *PostBufferLength1*, information relates to a specific camera, otherwise to all cameras attached to the hardware device.
- **RecordingPath[optional number]**  
Path to the folder in which a camera's database should be stored. If specified as, for example, *RecordingPath1*, information relates to a specific camera, otherwise to all cameras attached to the hardware device.
- **ArchivePath[optional number]**  
Path to the folder in which the camera's archived recordings (see page 92) should be stored. Remember that an archiving path is only relevant if not using dynamic paths for archiving (see page 65). If specified as, for example, *ArchivePath1*, information relates to a specific camera, otherwise to all cameras attached to the hardware device.
- **RetentionTime[optional number]**  
Required retention time (in minutes). Remember that retention time is the total of recording time plus archiving time. If specified as, for example, *RetentionTime1*, information relates to a specific camera, otherwise to all cameras attached to the hardware device.
- **MjpegLiveFrameRate[optional number]**  
Required MJPEG live frame rate (in number of frames; depending on what has been configured on the camera, it will then know whether it is frames per second, minute, or hour). If specified as, for example, *MjpegLiveFrameRate1*, information relates to a specific camera, otherwise to all cameras attached to the hardware device.
- **MjpegRecordingFrameRate[optional number]**  
Required MJPEG recording frame rate (in number of frames; depending on what has been configured on the camera, it will then know whether it is frames per second, minute, or hour). If you need to specify a value which includes a decimal separator, use the full stop character (example: 7.62). If specified as, for example, *MjpegRecordingFrameRate1*, information relates to a specific camera, otherwise to all cameras attached to the hardware device.
- **MotionSensitivity[optional number]**  
A value between 0-256; corresponds to using the *Sensitivity* slider when configuring motion detection settings in the Management Application. If specified as, for example, *MotionSensitivity1*, information relates to a specific camera, otherwise to all cameras attached to the hardware device.



- A value between 0-10000; corresponds to using the *Motion* slider when configuring motion detection settings in the Management Application. If specified as, for example, *MotionDetectionThreshold1*, information relates to a specific camera, otherwise to all cameras attached to the hardware device.

- Lets you specify how often motion detection analysis should be carried out on video from the camera. Specified in milliseconds. The interval is applied regardless of the camera's frame rate settings. If specified as, for example, *MotionDetectionInterval1*, information relates to a specific camera, otherwise to all cameras attached to the hardware device.

[illegible]

- The first line of the CSV file must contain the headers, and subsequent lines must contain information about one hardware device each
- Separators can be commas, semicolons or tabs, but cannot be mixed
- All lines must contain valid values—pay special attention to the fact that camera names, user names, etc. must be unique, and must not contain any of the following special characters: < > & ' " \ / : \* ? | [ ]
- There is no fixed order of values, and optional parameters can be omitted entirely
- Boolean fields are considered true unless set to 0, false or no
- Lines containing only separators are ignored
- Empty lines are ignored
- Even though the CSV file format is generally ASCII only, Unicode identifiers are allowed; even without Unicode identifiers, the entire file or even individual characters are allowed to be Unicode strings

Wizards

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



Some examples (using semicolon as the separator):

- "camera"; is interpreted as camera
- "cam;"era"; is interpreted as cam;"era
- ""camera""; is interpreted as "camera"
- "; is interpreted as an empty string
- ...; " cam"" era " ;... is interpreted as | cam" era | (where | is not part of the interpretation but only used to show the start and end of the interpretation)
- ""camera; is not valid as there are characters outside the quote-encapsulated value
- "cam" "era"; is not valid as the two quotes are separated with a space and quotes cannot be nested
- "cam"er"a"; is not valid as you cannot nest quotes
- cam"era"; is not valid as there are characters outside the quotes

## Configure Video and Recording Wizard

The Configure Video and Recording wizard helps you quickly configure your cameras' video and recording properties. The wizard is divided into a number of pages. All properties on a white background are editable; properties on a [light blue background](#) cannot be edited.

### Video Settings and Preview

Video settings typically let you control bandwidth, brightness, compression, contrast, resolution, rotation, etc.

Use the list in the left side of the wizard window to select a camera and adjust its video settings. Then select the next camera and adjust its settings, and so on. Video settings are to a large extent camera-specific, and must therefore be configured individually for each camera.

- Click the *Open Settings Dialog* button to configure the camera's settings in a separate dialog.



When you change video settings, they are applied immediately. This means that—for most cameras—you are immediately able to see the effect of your settings in a preview image. However, it also means that you cannot undo your changes by exiting the wizard.

For cameras set to use the video formats MPEG or H.264, you are typically able to select which live frame rate to use for the camera.

Video settings may feature an *Include Date and Time* setting. If set to *Yes*, date and time from the camera will be included in video. Note, however, that cameras are separate units which may have separate timing devices, power supplies, etc. Camera time and XProtect Enterprise system time may therefore not correspond fully, and this may occasionally lead to confusion. As all frames are time-stamped by XProtect Enterprise upon reception, and exact date and time information for each image is thus already known, it is recommended that the setting is set to *No*.

**Tip:** For consistent time synchronization, you may—if supported by the camera—automatically synchronize camera and system time through a time server.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## Online Schedule

Specify when each camera should be online. An online camera is a camera that transfers video to the XProtect Enterprise server for live viewing and further processing. The fact that a camera is online will not in itself mean that video from the camera is recorded (recording settings are configured on one of the wizard's next pages).

By default, cameras added to XProtect Enterprise will automatically be online (*Always on*), and you will only need to modify their online schedules if you require cameras to be online only at specific times or events. Note, however, that this default may be changed as part of the scheduling options (see page 103).

For each camera, you are initially able to select between two online schedules:

- **Always on:** The camera is always online.
- **Always off:** The camera is never online.

If these two options are too simple for your needs, use the **Create / Edit...** button to specify online schedules according to your needs, and then select these schedules for your cameras. This way, you can specify whether cameras should be online within specific periods of time, or whether they should start and stop transferring video when specific events occur within specific periods of time.

The **template** can help you configure similar properties quickly. Say you have 50 cameras and you want a particular online schedule on all of them. Instead of having to enter the same piece of information 50 times, you can simply enter it once in the template, and then apply the template to the 50 cameras with only two clicks.

- **Apply template:** Lets you select which cameras you want to apply the template for. You then use *Apply template on selected cameras* (see description in the following) to actually apply the template.

**Tip:** To select all cameras in the list, click the *Select All* button.

- **Select All:** Click button to select all cameras in the *Apply Template* column.
- **Clear All:** Click button to clear all selections in the *Apply Template* column.
- **Apply template on selected cameras:** Lets you apply the value from the template to selected cameras.

## Live and Recording Settings (Motion-JPEG Cameras)

This wizard page only appears if one or more of your cameras use the **MJPEG** video format.

Specify which frame rates to use for each camera. You can also select pre- and post-recording, allowing you to store recordings from periods preceding and following detected motion and/or specified events.

**How does pre- and post-recording work?** XProtect Enterprise receives video in a continuous stream from the camera whenever the camera is enabled and scheduled to be online. This is what lets you view live video, but it also means that XProtect Enterprise can easily store received video for a number of seconds in its memory (a.k.a. buffering). If it turns out that the buffered video is needed for pre- or post-recording, it is automatically appended to the recording. If not, it is simply discarded.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



- **Live Frame Rate:** Frame rate for live video from the camera. Select required number of frames per second.
- **Recording Frame Rate:** Frame rate for recorded video from the camera. Select required number of frames per second.
- **Record on:** Lets you select under which conditions video from the camera should be recorded:
  - **Always:** Record whenever the camera is enabled (see page 74) and scheduled to be online (see page 105). The latter allows for time-based recording.
  - **Never:** Never record. Live video will be displayed, but—since no video is kept in the database—users will not be able to play back video from the camera.
  - **Motion Detection:** Select this to record video in which motion (see page 81) is detected. Unless post-recording (see the following) is used, recording will stop immediately after the last motion is detected.
  - **Event:** Only available for individual cameras which have already been configured to be able to record on events; this option is never available in the template. Select this to use the camera's existing events-based recording configuration. Read more about events on page 114.
  - **Motion Detection & Event:** Only available for individual cameras which have already been configured to be able to record on events; this option is never available in the template. Select this to use the camera's existing motion- and events-based recording configuration.
- **Pre-recording:** You can store recordings from periods preceding detected motion and/or start events. Select check box to enable this feature. Remember to specify required number of seconds in the neighboring column.
- **Seconds [of pre-recording]:** Specify the number of seconds for which you want to record video from before recording start conditions (that is motion or start event) are met. Usually, only some seconds of pre-recording is required, but you can specify up to 65535 seconds of pre-recording, corresponding to 18 hours, 12 minutes and 15 seconds. However, if specifying a very long pre-recording time, you can potentially run into a scenario where your pre-recording time spans scheduled or unscheduled archiving times (you define these on one of the wizard's next pages). That can be problematic since pre-recording does not work well during archiving.
- **Post-recording:** You can store recordings from periods following detected motion and/or stop events. Select check box to enable this feature. Remember to specify required number of seconds in the neighboring column.
- **Seconds [of post-recording]:** Specify the number of seconds for which you want to record video from after recording stop conditions (that is motion or stop event) are met. Usually, only some seconds of post-recording is required, but you can specify up to 65535 seconds of post-recording, corresponding to 18 hours, 12 minutes and 15 seconds. However, if specifying a very long post-recording time, you can potentially run into a scenario where your post-recording time spans scheduled or unscheduled archiving times (you define these on one of the wizard's next pages). That can be problematic since post-recording does not work well during archiving.

The **template** can help you configure similar properties quickly. Say you have 50 cameras and you want a particular frame rate on all of them. Instead of having to enter the same piece of

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



information 50 times, you can simply enter it once in the template, and then apply the template to the 50 cameras with only two clicks.

- **Apply template:** Lets you select which cameras you want to apply the template for. You then use *Apply template on selected cameras* (see description in the following) to actually apply the template.

**Tip:** To select all cameras in the list, click the *Select All* button.

- **Select All:** Click button to select all cameras in the *Apply Template* column.
- **Clear All:** Click button to clear all selections in the *Apply Template* column.
- **Apply template on selected cameras:** Lets you apply the value from the template to selected cameras.

## Live and Recording Settings (MPEG Cameras)

This wizard page only appears if one or more of your cameras use the **MPEG** video format.

Specify which frame rate to use for each camera, and whether to record all frames or keyframes only. You can also select pre- and post-recording, allowing you to store recordings from periods preceding and following detected motion and/or specified events.

**How does pre- and post-recording work?** XProtect Enterprise receives video in a continuous stream from the camera whenever the camera is enabled and scheduled to be online. This is what lets you view live video, but it also means that XProtect Enterprise can easily store received video for a number of seconds in its memory (a.k.a. buffering). If it turns out that the buffered video is needed for pre- or post-recording, it is automatically appended to the recording. If not, it is simply discarded.

- **Live Frame Rate:** Frame rate for live video from the camera. Select required number of frames per second.
- **Record Keyframes Only:** Keyframes stored at specified intervals record the entire view of the camera, whereas the frames between keyframes record only pixels that change; this helps greatly reduce the size of MPEG files. Select the check box if you only want to record keyframes.
- **Record on:** Lets you select under which conditions video from the camera should be recorded:
  - **Always:** Record whenever the camera is enabled (see page 74) and scheduled to be online (see page 105). The latter allows for time-based recording.
  - **Never:** Never record. Live video will be displayed, but—since no video is kept in the database—users will not be able to play back video from the camera.
  - **Motion Detection:** Select this to record video in which motion (see page 81) is detected. Unless post-recording (see the following) is used, recording will stop immediately after the last motion is detected.
  - **Event:** Only available for individual cameras which have already been configured to be able to record on events; this option is never available in the template. Select this to use the camera's existing events-based recording configuration. Read more about events on page 114.



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



- **Motion Detection & Event:** Only available for individual cameras which have already been configured to be able to record on events; this option is never available in the template. Select this to use the camera's existing motion- and events-based recording configuration.
- **Pre-recording:** You can store recordings from periods preceding detected motion and/or start events. Select check box to enable this feature. Remember to specify required number of seconds in the neighboring column.
- **Seconds [of pre-recording]:** Specify the number of seconds for which you want to record video from before recording start conditions (that is motion or start event) are met. Usually, only some seconds of pre-recording is required, but you can specify up to 65535 seconds of pre-recording, corresponding to 18 hours, 12 minutes and 15 seconds. However, if specifying a very long pre-recording time, you can potentially run into a scenario where your pre-recording time spans scheduled or unscheduled archiving times (you define these on one of the wizard's next pages). That can be problematic since pre-recording does not work well during archiving.
- **Post-recording:** You can store recordings from periods following detected motion and/or stop events. Select check box to enable this feature. Remember to specify required number of seconds in the neighboring column.
- **Seconds [of post-recording]:** Specify the number of seconds for which you want to record video from after recording stop conditions (that is motion or stop event) are met. Usually, only some seconds of post-recording is required, but you can specify up to 65535 seconds of post-recording, corresponding to 18 hours, 12 minutes and 15 seconds. However, if specifying a very long post-recording time, you can potentially run into a scenario where your post-recording time spans scheduled or unscheduled archiving times (you define these on one of the wizard's next pages). That can be problematic since post-recording does not work well during archiving.

The **template** can help you configure similar properties quickly. Say you have 50 cameras and you want a particular frame rate on all of them. Instead of having to enter the same piece of information 50 times, you can simply enter it once in the template, and then apply the template to the 50 cameras with only two clicks.

- **Apply template:** Lets you select which cameras you want to apply the template for. You then use *Apply template on selected cameras* (see description in the following) to actually apply the template.

**Tip:** To select all cameras in the list, click the *Select All* button.

- **Select All:** Click button to select all cameras in the *Apply Template* column.
- **Clear All:** Click button to clear all selections in the *Apply Template* column.
- **Apply template on selected cameras:** Lets you apply the value from the template to selected cameras.

## Drive Selection

Specify which drives you want to store cameras' recordings on. You can specify separate drives/paths for recording and archiving.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



**What is archiving?** Archiving—an integrated and automated feature—helps you store recordings beyond the capabilities of XProtect Enterprise’s standard database. Archiving thus maximizes storage capacity and minimizes risk. For more detailed information, see page 92.

- **Drive:** Letter representing the drive in question, for example C:. To add further network drives, use the *Network drive* field (described in the following).
  - **Purpose:** Lets you select what you want to use the drive for:
    - **Not in use:** Do not use the drive.
    - **Recording:** Only available if the drive is a local drive on the XProtect Enterprise server; network drives cannot be used for recording. Use the drive for storing recordings in XProtect Enterprise’s regular database.
    - **Archiving:** Use the drive for archiving. For archiving, it is generally a good idea to use a drive which has plenty of space.
- Tip:** With dynamic path selection for archives (see description in the following), you do not have to worry about drive space.
- **Rec. & Archiving:** Only available if the drive is a local drive on the XProtect Enterprise server; network drives cannot be used for recording. Use the drive for storing recordings in XProtect Enterprise’s regular database as well as for archiving.
- **Recording Path:** Path to the folder in which to store recordings in XProtect Enterprise’s regular database. Default is [drive letter]:\MediaDatabase. To browse for another folder, click the browse icon next to the required cell. You are only able to specify a path to a folder on the selected drive (which must be a local drive). If you change the recording path, and there are existing recordings at the old location, you will be asked whether you want to move the recordings to the new location (recommended), leave them at the old location, or delete them.
- **Archiving Path:** Only editable if not using dynamic path selection for archives (see description in the following). Path to the folder in which archived recordings should be stored. To browse for another folder, click the browse icon next to the required cell. You can specify a path to local or networked drive as required. If you change the archiving path, and there are existing archived recordings at the old location, you will be asked whether you want to move the archived recordings to the new location (recommended), leave them at the old location, or delete them.
- **Total Size:** Total size of the drive.
- **Free Space:** Amount of unused space left on the drive.
- **Dynamic path selection for archives:** If using this option (highly recommended), you should select a number of different drives for archiving. If the path containing the XProtect Enterprise database is on one of the drives you have selected for archiving, XProtect Enterprise will always try to archive to that drive first. If not, XProtect Enterprise automatically archives to the archiving drive with the most available space at any time, provided there is not a camera database using that drive. Which drive has the most available space may change during the archiving process, and archiving may therefore happen to several archiving drives during the same process. This fact will have no impact on how users find and view archived recordings.
- **Network Drive:** Lets you add a network drive to the list of drives. First specify the network drive, then click the **Add** button (the button becomes available when you specify a



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



network drive). Note that network drives cannot be used for recording, only for archiving.

- **Archiving schedule:** Lets you specify when you want XProtect Enterprise to automatically move recordings to your archiving path(s). You can specify up to 24 archiving times per day, with minimum one hour between each one. As a rule of thumb, the more you expect to record, the more often you should archive.

## Recording and Archiving Settings

Select recording and archiving paths for each individual camera.

**What is archiving?** Archiving—an integrated and automated feature—helps you store recordings beyond the capabilities of XProtect Enterprise’s standard database. Archiving thus maximizes storage capacity and minimizes risk. For more detailed information, see page 92.

- **Recording Path:** Path to the folder in which to store the camera’s recordings in XProtect Enterprise’s regular database. Default is C:\MediaDatabase. If you specified several recording paths on the wizard’s previous page, you can select between those paths.
- **Archiving Path:** Path to the folder in which archived recordings should be stored. Only relevant if not using dynamic path selection for archives.
- **Retention Time:** Total amount of time for which you want to keep recordings from the camera (that is recordings in XProtect Enterprise’s database as well as any archived recordings).

Note that the retention time covers the **total** amount of time you want to keep recordings for; in earlier XProtect Enterprise versions time limits were specified separately for the database and archives.

The **template** can help you configure similar properties quickly. Say you have 50 cameras and you want a particular recording path for all of them. Instead of having to enter the same piece of information 50 times, you can simply enter it once in the template, and then apply the template to the 50 cameras with only two clicks.

- **Apply template:** Lets you select which cameras you want to apply the template for. You then use *Apply template on selected cameras* (see description in the following) to actually apply the template.

**Tip:** To select all cameras in the list, click the *Select All* button.

- **Select All:** Click button to select all cameras in the *Apply Template* column.
- **Clear All:** Click button to clear all selections in the *Apply Template* column.
- **Apply template on selected cameras:** Lets you apply the value from the template to selected cameras.

## Adjust Motion Detection Wizard

The Adjust Motion Detection wizard helps you quickly configure your cameras' motion detection properties. The wizard is divided into two pages.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



Cameras that do not support multiple simultaneous video streams will not be able to connect to the surveillance server and the Management Application at the same time; therefore it is recommended to stop the Recording Server service (see page 127) when configuring such devices for motion detection and PTZ. See also page 90.

## Exclude Regions

Exclude regions let you disable motion detection in specific areas of cameras' views. Disabling motion detection in certain areas may help you avoid detection of irrelevant motion, for example if a camera covers an area where a tree is swaying in the wind or where cars regularly pass by in the background.

For each camera for which exclude regions are relevant, use the list in the left side of the wizard window to select the camera and define its exclude regions. Exclude regions are camera-specific, and must therefore be configured individually for each camera on which they are required. When you have selected a camera, do the following to define its exclude regions:

1. Select the *Enable* check box. You will see a preview from the camera. You define exclude regions in the preview, which is divided into small sections by a grid.
2. To define exclude regions, drag the mouse pointer over the required areas in the preview while pressing the mouse button down. Left mouse button selects a grid section; right mouse button clears a grid section. Selected areas are highlighted in blue.

**Tip:** With the *Set All* button, you can quickly select all grid sections in the preview. This may be advantageous if you want to disable motion detection in most areas of the preview, in which case you can simply clear the few sections in which you do not want to disable motion detection.

## Motion Detection

Motion detection is a key element in most surveillance systems. Depending on your further configuration, motion detection settings may determine when video is recorded (that is saved on the surveillance system server), when notifications are sent, when output (such as lights or sirens) is triggered, etc. Time spent on finding the best possible motion detection settings for each camera may thus help you later avoid unnecessary recordings, notifications, etc. Depending on the physical location of your cameras, it is often a good idea to test motion detection settings under different physical conditions (day/night, windy/calm weather, etc.).

Depending on your needs, you can configure motion detection settings individually for each camera, or for several cameras in one go. Use the list in the left side of the wizard window to select cameras; to select several cameras at a time, press CTRL or SHIFT on your keyboard while selecting. When you select a camera, you will see a preview from that camera. If you select several cameras, you will see a preview from the last camera you select. When you have selected one or more cameras, do the following to configure their motion detection settings:

1. Note any green areas in the preview. Green areas are areas with motion.
2. Adjust the *Sensitivity* slider so that irrelevant background noise is filtered out, and only real motion is shown in green.

As an alternative to using the slider, you may specify a value between 0 and 256 in the field next to the slider to control the sensitivity setting.



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



**Tip:** Technically, the slider determines how much each pixel must change before it is regarded as motion. With a high sensitivity, very little change in a pixel is required before it is regarded as motion. If you find the concept of sensitivity difficult to grasp, try dragging the slider to the left: The more you drag the slider to the left, the more of the preview becomes green. This is because with a high sensitivity even the slightest change in a pixel will be regarded as motion.

3. Adjust the *Motion* slider so that motion detection is only triggered by the required level of motion. The selected motion level is indicated by the black vertical line in the *Motion level* bar above the sliders. The black vertical line serves as a threshold: When motion is above (that is to the right of) the selected level, the bar changes color from green to red, indicating a positive motion detection.

As an alternative to using the slider, you may specify a value between 0 and 10000 in the field next to the slider to control the motion setting.

**Tip:** Technically, the slider determines how many pixels must change before it is regarded as motion. The more you drag the slider to the left, the fewer pixels must change before you have a positive motion detection. Thus, as a rule of thumb, the more you drag the slider to the left, the more positive motion detections you are likely to get since less change will be required to trigger a positive motion detection. The number of positive motion detections may subsequently affect the amount of video you record, the amount of notifications you receive, etc.

4. Motion detection is vital on most surveillance systems, but also consumes system resources on the surveillance server. In the *Detection interval* field, you are therefore able to specify how often motion detection analysis should be carried out on video from the camera. Default is every 240 milliseconds (that is close to once every quarter of a second). The interval is applied regardless of your cameras' frame rate settings.

## ***Motion Detection and PTZ Cameras***

Motion detection generally works the same way for PTZ (Pan/Tilt/Zoom) cameras as it does for regular cameras. However:

- It is not possible to configure motion detection separately for each of a PTZ camera's preset positions.
- In order not to activate unwanted recording, notifications, etc., motion detection is automatically disabled while a PTZ camera moves between two preset positions. After a number of seconds—the so-called transition time, specified as part of the PTZ camera's PTZ patrolling properties (see page 86)—motion detection is automatically enabled again.

## ***Configure User Access Wizard***

The Configure User Access wizard helps you quickly configure clients' access to the XProtect Enterprise server as well as which users should be able to use clients.

When using the wizard, all users you add will have access all to cameras, including any new cameras added at a later stage. If this is not acceptable, specify access settings (see page 130), users (see page 133) and user rights (see page 136) separately. Also note that you cannot add users to groups (see page 135) through the wizard.

The wizard is divided into a number of pages:

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## Server Access Settings

- **Server name:** Name of the XProtect Enterprise server as it will appear in clients. Client users with rights to configure their clients will see the name of the server when they create views in their clients.
- **Local port:** Port number to use for communication between clients and the surveillance server. The default port number is 80; you can change the port number if port 80 is used for other purposes in your organization.
- **Character encoding (language):** Select required language/character set. Example: If the surveillance server runs a Japanese version of Windows, select *Japanese*. Provided access clients also use a Japanese version of Windows, this will ensure that the correct language and character encoding is used in clients' communication with the server. If using a master/slave setup (see page 128), remember to specify the same language/character set on all involved servers.
- **Internet access:** Select the check box if the server should be accessible from the internet through a router or firewall. If selecting this option, also specify the public ("outside") IP address and port number in the following fields. When using public access, the router or firewall used must be configured so requests sent to the public IP address and port are forwarded to the local ("inside") IP address and port of the XProtect Enterprise server.
- **Internet address:** Lets you specify a public IP address or hostname for use when the XProtect Enterprise server should be available from the internet.
- **Internet port:** Lets you specify a port number for use when the XProtect Enterprise should be available from the internet. The default port number is 80; you can change the port number if port 80 is used for other purposes in your organization.

## Basic and Windows Users

You can add client users in two ways, which may be combined.

- **Basic user:** Lets you create a dedicated surveillance system user account with basic user name and password authentication for each individual user. To add a basic user, specify required user name and password, and click the *Add Basic User* button. Repeat as required.
- **Windows user:** Lets you import users defined locally on the server, or users from Active Directory®, and authenticate them based on their Windows login. This generally provides better security, and is the recommended method. Note, however, that this method does not work for users of the PDA Client (see page 168).

**Are there any prerequisites for adding users from a local database?** The users must have been defined as local PC users on the server. Simple file sharing must be disabled on the server. To disable simple file sharing, right-click Windows' *Start* button and select *Explore*. In the window that opens, select the *Tools* menu, then select *Folder Options...*, then the *View* tab. Scroll to the bottom of the tab's *Advanced Settings* list, and make sure that the *Use simple file sharing (Recommended)* check box is cleared. When ready, click *OK* and close the window.

**What is Active Directory?** Active Directory is a distributed directory service included with several Windows Server operating systems; users are specified centrally in Active Directory. In short, the benefits of importing user data from Active Directory are that administrators do not have to create separate user accounts for accessing the surveillance

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



system because user authentication will be handled centrally by Active Directory, and that users can use their Windows login when accessing the surveillance system; no need to memorize separate user names and passwords.

**Are there any prerequisites for adding users from Active Directory?** XProtect Enterprise verifies client users' identities using NTLM challenge handshake with a Microsoft Domain Controller. In order to be able to import users and groups through Active Directory, a server with Active Directory installed and acting as domain controller must be available on your network. Consult your network administrator if in doubt.

**Can I add groups from Active Directory?** You can only add individual users from Active Directory to XProtect Enterprise. Active Directory also supports groups of users, but you cannot add such groups to XProtect Enterprise. You can, however, group individual users in XProtect Enterprise, and quickly assign common user rights for all users within such groups.

Add Windows users the following way:

1. Click the *Add Windows User...* button. This will open the *Select Users or Groups* window:

By default, you will be able to make selections from your entire directory. If you want to narrow this, click the *Select Users and Groups* window's *Locations...* button, and select the location you require.



2. In the *Enter the object names to select* box, type the required user names, then use the *Check Names* feature to verify that the user names you have entered are recognized. Example: *Brian; Hannah; Karen; Wayne*
3. When ready, click *OK*.

When a user who has been added from a local database logs in with a client, the user should not specify any server name, PC name, or IP address as part of the user name. Example of a correctly specified user name: USER001. Example of an incorrectly specified user name: PC001/USER001. The user should of course still specify a password and any required server information.

## Access Summary

The access summary simply lists which cameras your users will have access to. When using the wizard, all users you have added will have access all to cameras, including any new cameras added at a later stage. You can, however, limit individual users' access to cameras by changing their individual rights (see page 136).

## Replace Hardware Device Wizard

The Replace Hardware wizard helps you replace a hardware device—which you have previously added to and configured on your surveillance system—with a new one. This can typically be

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



relevant if you replace a physical camera on your network. The Replace Hardware Device wizard helps you through the entire replacement process on the surveillance system server, including:

- Detecting the new hardware device
- Specifying license for the new hardware device
- Deciding what to do with existing recordings from the old hardware device

You access the Replace Device Hardware wizard from the Management Application's navigation pane: Expand *Advanced Configuration*, expand *Hardware Devices*, right-click the hardware device you want to replace, and select *Replace Hardware Device*. You can access also the wizard when dealing with a hardware device's Network, Device Type & License properties (see page 59).

Remember that you must have a Device License Key (DLK) for every hardware device (cameras, etc.) you intend to use on your XProtect Enterprise system. Before using the wizard, make sure you have a DLK for the new hardware device.

The wizard is divided into two pages:

## New Hardware Device Information

First specify details about the new hardware device:

- **Hardware device address:** IP address or host name of the new hardware device.
- **Hardware device port:** Port number to use for communicating with the hardware device. Default is port 80. If the new hardware device is located behind a NAT-enabled router or a firewall, you may need to specify a different port number. When this is the case, also remember to configure the router/firewall so it maps the port and IP addresses used by the new hardware device.
- **User name:** User name for the hardware device's administrator account. Many organizations use the hardware device manufacturer's default user names for their hardware devices. If that is the case in your organization, select *<default>* (do not type a manufacturer's default user name as this can be a source of error; trust that XProtect Enterprise will know the manufacturer's default user name). Other typical user names, such as *admin* or *root* are also selectable from the list. If requiring a user name which is not on the list, simply type the required user name.

**Tip:** User names you type yourself will subsequently be added to the list, so you can easily select them later.

- **Password:** Password required for accessing the new hardware device's administrator account.

**Tip:** If in doubt about which user name/password to use, ask yourself: Have you previously used a web page to connect to the hardware device and view video? While you did this, were you also able to configure camera settings, such as resolution, etc.? If you can answer yes to both questions, you were in all likelihood using the hardware device's administrator account, in which case you will also know the user name/password.

**Tip:** If you are still in doubt, look in the Device Pack Release Notes, available from the Downloads section of [www.milestonesys.com](http://www.milestonesys.com). This will show you the administrator account user name for each supported hardware device. For obvious reasons it will not show you the password.



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



Then specify which device driver to use for the new hardware device. You can do this in two ways:

- By selecting the required video device driver in the **Hardware device type** list, then clicking the **Auto-detect/Verify Hardware Device Type** button to verify that the driver matches the hardware device.

- or -

- By just clicking the **Auto-detect/Verify Hardware Device Type** button to automatically detect and verify the right driver.

When the right driver is found, the **Serial number (MAC address)** field will display the MAC address of the new hardware device. The Device License Key (DLK) required to use the hardware device is issued based on this MAC address.

If you have already imported a .dlk file which includes the DLK for the new hardware device, the **Device license key (DLK)** field will be pre-filled. If not, you can either enter the DLK for the new device manually in the field, or click the **Import DLKs** button to import a .dlk file (see page 57) which includes the DLK for the new hardware device.

When ready, click *Next*.

## Database Action

The last page of the Replace Hardware wizard lets you decide what to do with the camera and the database containing recordings from the camera attached to the old hardware device. For multi-camera devices such as video encoders, you must decide what to do for each video channel on the new hardware device.

The table in the left side of the wizard page lists available video channels on the new hardware device. For a regular single-camera hardware device, there will only be one video channel. For video encoders, there will typically be several video channels.

1. For each video channel, use the table's **Inherit** column to select which camera from the old hardware device should be inherited by the new hardware device.
2. Then decide what to do with camera databases. You have three options:
  - **Inherit existing database(s):** The cameras you selected to be inherited by the new hardware device will inherit camera names, recordings databases as well as any archives from the old hardware device. Databases and archives (see page 92) will be renamed to reflect the new hardware device's MAC address and video channels. The rights (see page 136) of users with access to the inherited cameras are automatically updated so they can view both old and new recordings. Users will basically not notice the hardware device replacement since camera names will remain the same.
  - **Delete the existing database(s):** The databases of the cameras you selected to be inherited by the new hardware device will be deleted. New databases will be created for future recordings, but it will not be possible to view recordings from before the hardware replacement.
  - **Leave the existing database(s):** The databases of the cameras you selected to be inherited by the new hardware device will not be deleted. New databases will be created for future recordings, but even though the old databases still exist on the XProtect Enterprise server it will not be possible to view recordings from before the

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



hardware replacement. Should you later want to delete the old databases, deletion must take place manually.

3. If the new hardware device has fewer video channels than the old hardware device, it will not be possible for the new hardware device to inherit all cameras from the old hardware device. When that is the case, you will be asked what to do with the databases of cameras that could not be inherited by the new hardware device. You have two options:
  - **Delete the databases for the cameras that are not inherited:** The databases of the cameras that could not be inherited by the new hardware devices will be deleted. It will not be possible to view recordings from before the hardware replacement. New databases will of course be created for future recordings by the new hardware devices.
  - **Leave the databases for the cameras that are not inherited:** The databases of the cameras that could not be inherited by the new hardware devices will not be deleted. Even though the old databases still exist on the XProtect Enterprise server it will not be possible to view recordings from before the hardware replacement. Should you later want to delete the old databases, deletion must take place manually. New databases will of course be created for future recordings by the new hardware devices.
4. Click *Finish*.
5. When ready, restart the Recording Server service (see page 127). The hardware replacement will not be evident in clients until you restart the Recording Server service.



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## Licenses

---

You must have a Device License Key (DLK) for every hardware device (cameras, etc.) on your XProtect Enterprise system.

Remember that you are allowed to install and use only the number of cameras covered by your license agreement; regardless of your number of available DLKs. For example, a fully used four-port video encoder counts as four cameras; it will thus use four licenses even though its four cameras are connected through a single hardware device.

You get DLKs as part of the software registration process on the Milestone website, [www.milestonesys.com](http://www.milestonesys.com). Upon registration, all your DLKs are sent to you as a single .dlk file attached to an e-mail. Often, your XProtect Enterprise vendor will take care of the process for you; in which case all you have to do is import the .dlk file you receive by e-mail.

### ***Import DLKs (Device License Keys)***

Importing the file is quick and easy, and it will free you from having to specify license keys manually for each hardware device later.

1. When you receive the e-mail, save the attached .dlk file at a location accessible from the XProtect Enterprise server, for example on a network drive or on a USB stick.
2. In the Management Application's *File* menu, select *Import DLKs...* (or click the *Import DLKs* button if you are working with the Add Hardware Devices wizard (see page 30)).

If you need to import DLKs in connection with an upgrade of your XProtect Enterprise software version, always use the *File > Import DLKs...* method.

3. Browse to the location at which you have saved the received .dlk file, select the file, and click *Open*. All DLKs are now imported into XProtect Enterprise, and will be available when you add cameras and other hardware (see page 30).

### ***Specify a New SLC (Software License Code)***

If you have upgraded your XProtect Enterprise or otherwise acquired a new Software License Code (SLC), do the following to use the new SLC:

1. In the Management Application's *Help* menu, select *About...*
2. In the *Software License Code (SLC)* field, overwrite the old SLC with the new SLC, and click *OK*.
3. Close the Management Application. When you open the Management Application again, the new SLC will take effect.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## Hardware Devices

---

You add cameras and other hardware devices, such as video encoders, Digital Video Recorders, etc., to your XProtect Enterprise system through the Add Hardware Devices wizard (see page 30). If microphones and/or speakers are attached to a hardware device, they are automatically added as well.

You are allowed to use up to 64 cameras per XProtect Enterprise server. Note that, if required, it is possible to *add* more cameras than you are allowed to use. If using video encoder devices on your system, bear in mind that many video encoder devices have more than one camera connected to them. For example, a fully used four-port video encoder will count as four cameras.

## Configuration

Once you have added hardware devices, you can specify/edit device-specific properties, such as the IP address, which video channels to use, which COM ports to use for controlling attached PTZ (Pan/Tilt/Zoom) cameras, whether to use fisheye technology, etc.:

1. In the Management Application's navigation pane, expand *Advanced Configuration*, expand *Hardware Devices*, right-click the required hardware device, and select *Properties*.
2. Specify Name & Video Channels, Network, Device Type & License, PTZ Device, and Fisheye properties as required. All of the properties are described in the following.
3. Save your configuration changes by clicking the *Save Configuration* button in the Management Application's toolbar.

## Name & Video Channels

- **Hardware name:** Name of the hardware device as it will appear in the Management Application. If required, you can overwrite the existing hardware device name with a new one. Hardware device names must be unique, and must not contain any of the following special characters: < > & ' " \ / : \* ? | [ ]
- **Video channel # enabled:** Lets you enable/disable each of the selected hardware device's video channels. Many hardware devices only have a single video channel, in which case only one channel will be listed. Other hardware devices—typically video encoder devices—have several video channels.

**Why are some of the channels unavailable?** This will be the case if you are not licensed to use all of a video encoder device's channels. Example: You have a video encoder device with four channels, but your license for the device only allows you to use two of them. In that case, you will only be able to have two channels enabled at a time; the two other channels will be disabled. Note that you are free to select which two channels you want to enable. Contact your Milestone vendor if you need to change your number of licenses.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## Network, Device Type & License

- **Address:** IP address or host name of the hardware device.
- **HTTP port:** Port to use for HTTP communication with the hardware device. Default is port 80. To use the default port, select **Use default HTTP port**.
- **FTP port:** Port to use for FTP communication with the hardware device. Default is port 21. To use the default port, select **Use default FTP port**.
- **User name:** User name for the hardware device's administrator account. Many organizations use the hardware device manufacturer's default user names for their hardware devices. If that is the case in your organization, select *<default>* (do not type a manufacturer's default user name as this can be a source of error; trust that XProtect Enterprise will know the manufacturer's default user name). Other typical user names, such as *admin* or *root* are also selectable from the list. If requiring a user name which is not on the list, simply type the required user name.

**Tip:** User names you type yourself will subsequently be added to the list, so you can easily select them later.

- **Password:** Password for the hardware device's administrator account, a.k.a. the root password.
- **Hardware type:** Read-only field displaying the type of video device driver used for communication with the hardware device.
- **Serial number (MAC address):** Read-only field displaying the serial number of device. The serial number is usually identical to the 12-character hexadecimal MAC address of the hardware device (example: 0123456789AF).
- **Device licence key (DLK):** The 16-character license key (DLK) which gives you the right to use the hardware device with XProtect Enterprise.
- **Replace Hardware Device:** Opens a wizard (see page 53), with which you—if required—can replace the selected hardware device with another one. This can typically be relevant if you replace a physical camera on your network. The wizard helps you take all relevant issues into account: finding the DLK for the new hardware device, deciding what to do with recordings from cameras attached to the old hardware device, etc.

## PTZ Device

The *PTZ Device* properties are only available if configuring video encoder hardware devices on which the use of PTZ (Pan/Tilt/Zoom) cameras is possible.

- **Connected cameras have Pan/tilt/Zoom capabilities:** Select check box if any of the cameras attached to the video encoder device is a PTZ camera.
- **PTZ type on COM#:** If a PTZ camera is controlled through the COM port (a.k.a. serial port) in question, select the required option. Options are device-specific, depending on which PTZ protocols are used by the device in question. If no PTZ cameras are controlled through the COM port in question, select *None*.

**Some of the options concern absolute and relative positioning. What is that?**  
Absolute positioning is when the PTZ camera is controlled based on a single fixed position,

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



against which all other positions are measured. Relative positioning is when the PTZ camera is controlled relative to its current position.

The table in the lower half of the dialog contains a row for each video channel on the hardware device. First row from the top corresponds to video channel 1, second row from the top corresponds to video channel 2, etc.

- **Name:** Name of the camera attached to the video channel in question.
- **Type:** Lets you select whether the camera on the selected camera channel is fixed or moveable:
  - **Fixed:** Camera is a regular camera mounted in a fixed position
  - **Moveable:** Camera is a PTZ camera
- **Port:** Available only if *Moveable* is selected in the *Type* column. Lets you select which COM port on the video encoder to use for controlling the PTZ camera.
- **Port Address:** Available only if *Moveable* is selected in the *Type* column. Lets you specify port address of the camera. The port address will normally be 1. If using daisy chained PTZ cameras, the port address will identify each of them, and you should verify your settings with those recommended in the documentation for the camera.

## Fisheye

Fisheye is a technology that allows viewing of 360-degree panoramic video through an advanced lens. If a camera attached to the hardware device is going to use fisheye, you must enable the technology and enter a special fisheye license key.

- **Enable fisheye:** Select check box to enable use of the fisheye technology and specify further properties.
- **Fisheye license key:** Enter your special fisheye license key. Only after you enter this key and click OK will it be possible to configure fisheye (see page 83) for camera(s) attached to the hardware device.

**Where do I get the special fisheye license key?** Contact your XProtect Enterprise vendor for further information.

## Use DVR (Digital Video Recorder) Devices

You can easily use DVR devices with XProtect Enterprise. You add DVR devices just like any other hardware devices; see Add Hardware Devices Wizard on page 30. In the Management Application, DVR hardware devices will be listed in the same way as video encoders.

Client users will experience no difference when viewing live video from a camera attached to at DVR compared to video from any other hardware device. However, when users view recordings from a DVR, the recordings will be viewed from the hard disk of the DVR rather than from a camera database on the XProtect Enterprise server.

PTZ (Pan/Tilt/Zoom) cameras connected to a DVR cannot be controlled through XProtect Enterprise.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## ***Use Dedicated Input/Output Devices***

It is possible to add a number of dedicated input/output (I/O) hardware devices to XProtect Enterprise. For information about which I/O hardware devices are supported, see the release notes.

When such I/O hardware devices are added, input on them can be used for generating events in XProtect Enterprise, and events in XProtect Enterprise can be used for activating output on the I/O hardware devices. This means that I/O hardware devices can be used in your events-based system setup in the same way as a camera.

When using some I/O hardware devices it is necessary for the surveillance system to regularly check the state of the hardware devices' input ports in order to detect whether input has been received. Such state checking at regular intervals is called *polling*. The interval between state checks, called a *polling frequency*, is specified as part of XProtect Enterprise's general ports & polling properties (see page 115). For such I/O hardware devices, the polling frequency should be set to the lowest possible value (one tenth of a second between state checks). For information about which I/O hardware devices require polling, see the release notes.

## ***Replace a Hardware Device***

If required, you can replace a hardware device—which you have previously added to and configured on your surveillance system—with a new one. This can typically be relevant if you replace a physical camera on your network.

The Replace Hardware Device wizard (see page 53) helps you through the entire replacement process on the surveillance system server, including:

- Detecting the new hardware device
- Specifying license for the new hardware device
- Deciding what to do with existing recordings from the old hardware device

You access the replace Hardware wizard from the Management Application's navigation pane: Expand *Advanced Configuration*, expand *Hardware Devices*, right-click the hardware device you want to replace, and select *Replace Hardware Device*.

You can access also the wizard when dealing with a hardware device's Network, Device Type & License properties (see page 59).

## ***Delete a Hardware Device***

**IMPORTANT:** Deleting a hardware device will not only delete all cameras, speakers and microphones attached to the hardware device. It will also delete any recordings from cameras on the hardware device.

1. In the Management Application's navigation pane, expand *Advanced Configuration*, expand *Hardware Devices*, right-click the hardware device you want to delete, and select *Delete Hardware device*.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



2. Confirm that you want to delete the hardware device and all its recordings.
3. Save your configuration changes by clicking the *Save Configuration* button in the Management Application's toolbar.
4. Restart the Recording Server service (see page 127).

If you find that deleting a hardware device is not the right thing to do, consider disabling the individual cameras, speakers or microphones connected to the hardware device instead:

1. In the Management Application's navigation pane, expand *Advanced Configuration*, expand *Hardware Devices*, and expand the hardware device in question.
2. Right-click the camera, microphone or speaker you want to disable, and select *Disable*.
3. Save your configuration changes by clicking the *Save Configuration* button in the Management Application's toolbar.
4. Restart the Recording Server service (see page 127).

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## Cameras and Recordings

---

You add cameras and other hardware devices, such as video encoders, DVRs, etc., to your XProtect Enterprise system through the Add Hardware Devices... wizard (see page 30). If microphones and/or speakers are attached to a hardware device, they are automatically added as well.

Once you have added hardware devices and attached cameras, you can configure video and recording settings in three ways:

- **Wizard-driven:** Guided configuration which lets you specify video, recording and archiving settings for all your cameras. See Configure Video & Recording Wizard on page 43 and Adjust Motion Detection Wizard on page 49.
- **General:** Lets you specify video, recording and shared settings (such as dynamic archiving paths and whether audio should be recorded or not) for all your cameras. See General Recording and Storage Configuration below.
- **Camera-specific:** Lets you specify video, recording and camera-specific settings (such as event notification, PTZ preset positions, and fisheye view areas) for each individual camera. See Camera-specific Configuration on page 74.

## General Recording and Storage Configuration

When you configure video and recording, you are able to specify certain properties for many cameras in one go. Either simply in order to speed up things, or because the properties in question are shared by all cameras rather than specific to individual cameras. To specify video, recording and shared settings (such as dynamic archiving paths and whether audio should be recorded or not) for all your cameras:

1. In the Management Application's navigation pane, expand *Advanced Configuration*, right-click *Cameras and Storage Information*, and select *Properties*.
2. Specify properties as required for Recording & Archiving Paths, Dynamic Path Selection, Video Recording, Frame Rate - MJPEG, Frame Rate - MPEG, Audio Selection, and Audio Recording. All of the properties are described on the following pages. When ready, click *OK*.
3. Save your configuration changes by clicking the *Save Configuration* button in the Management Application's toolbar.

## Recording & Archiving Paths

Note that all of the Recording and Archiving Paths properties can also be specified individually for each camera. All properties on a white background are editable; properties on a [light blue background](#) cannot be edited.

- **Template:** The template can help you configure similar properties quickly. Say you have 50 cameras and you want to change the recording path, archiving path, and retention time for all of them. Instead of having to enter the same three pieces of information 50 times, you can simply enter them once in the template, and then apply the template to the 50



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



cameras with only two clicks.

- **Apply Template:** Lets you select which cameras you want to apply the template for. You then use one of the two *Set* buttons (see descriptions in the following) to actually apply the template.

**Tip:** To select all cameras in the list, click the *Select All* button.

- **Camera Name:** Name of the camera as it will appear in the Management Application as well as in clients. If required, you can overwrite the existing camera name with a new one. Camera names must be unique, and must not contain any of the following special characters: < > & ' " \ / : \* ? | [ ]
- **Shortcut:** Users of the Smart Client can take advantage of keyboard shortcuts, some of which let the users toggle between viewing different cameras. Such shortcuts include numbers which are used to identify each camera. Shortcut numbers must be unique for each camera. A camera shortcut number must not contain any letters or special characters, and must not be longer than eight digits. Examples of correct camera shortcut numbers: 3, 12345678. Examples of incorrect camera shortcut numbers: Cam#3, 123456789. More information about using the keyboard shortcuts is available in the separate documentation for the Smart Client. In other applications, such as the Remote Client, the camera shortcut numbers cannot be used.
- **Recording Path:** Path to the folder in which the camera's database should be stored. Default is C:\MediaDatabase. To browse for another folder, click the browse icon next to the required cell. You are only able to specify a path to a folder on a *local* drive. You cannot specify a path to a network drive. The reason for this limitation is that if you were using a network drive, it would not be possible to save recordings if the network drive became unavailable. If you change the recording path, and there are existing recordings at the old location, you will be asked whether you want to move the recordings to the new location (recommended), leave them at the old location, or delete them.

**Tip:** If you have several cameras, and several local drives are available, you can improve performance by distributing individual cameras' databases across several drives.

- **Archiving Path:** Only editable if not using dynamic paths for archiving (see page 92). Path to the folder in which the camera's archived recordings should be stored. Default is C:\MediaDatabase. To browse for another folder, click the browse icon next to the required cell. You can specify a path to local or networked drive as required. If you change the archiving path, and there are existing archived recordings at the old location, you will be asked whether you want to move the archived recordings to the new location (recommended), leave them at the old location, or delete them. Note that if moving archived recordings, XProtect Enterprise will also archive what is currently in the camera's database; in case you wonder why the camera database is empty just after you have moved archived recordings, this is the reason.
- **Retention Time:** Total amount of time for which you want to keep recordings from the camera (that is recordings in the camera's database as well as any archived recordings). Default is 30 days.

Note that the retention time covers the total amount of time you want to keep recordings for; in earlier XProtect Enterprise versions time limits were specified separately for the database and archives.

- **Camera:** Click the **Open** button to configure detailed and/or camera-specific settings (such as event notification, PTZ preset positions, and fisheye view areas) for the selected



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



camera.

- **Select All:** Click button to select all cameras in the *Apply Template* column.
- **Clear All:** Click button to clear all selections in the *Apply Template* column.
- **Set selected template value on selected cameras:** Lets you apply one or more selected values from the template (rather than all values) to selected cameras.

Recording Path	Archiving Path	Retention Time
C:\MediaDataBase	D:\OurVideoArchive	1 Days

Example: Only the selected values are applied using this method.  
To select more than one value press CTRL while selecting.

- **Set all template values on selected cameras:** Lets you apply all values from the template to selected cameras.

## Dynamic Path Selection

When you configure video and recording, you can specify certain properties for many cameras in one go. In the case of Dynamic Path Selection, it is simply because the properties are shared by all cameras.

With dynamic paths for archiving (see page 92), you specify a number of different archiving paths, usually across several drives. If the path containing the XProtect Enterprise database on one of the drives you have selected for archiving, XProtect Enterprise will always try to archive to that drive first. If not, XProtect Enterprise automatically archives to the archiving drive with the most available space at any time, provided there is not a camera database using that drive. Which drive has the most available space may change during the archiving process, and archiving may therefore happen to several archiving drives during the same process. This fact will have no impact on how users find and view archived recordings.

Dynamic archiving paths are general for all your cameras; you cannot configure dynamic archiving paths for individual cameras.

If you use several surveillance servers in a master/slave setup (see page 128), each surveillance server must archive to its own mapped location in order for archiving to work. If you attempt to archive to the same mapped location for all the servers, archiving will fail.

All properties on a white background are editable; properties on a **light blue background** cannot be edited.

- **Enable dynamic path selection archives:** Enables the use of dynamic path selection, allowing you to select which paths you want to use. The list of selectable paths initially represents all drives on the server, both local and mapped drives. You can add further paths with the *New path* feature below the list.
- **Use:** Lets you select particular paths for use as dynamic archiving paths. Also lets you select a previously manually added path for removal (see description of *Remove* button in the following)
- **Drive:** Indicates which drive the path belongs on.
- **Path:** Path to use as dynamic archiving path.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



- **Drive Size:** Total amount of space on the drive, that is free space as well as used space.
- **Free Space:** Amount of free space available on the drive in question.
- **New path:** Lets you specify a new path, and add it to the list using the *Add* button. Paths must be reachable by the surveillance system server, and you must specify the path using the UNC (Universal Naming Convention) format, example: \\server\volume\directory\. When the new path is added, you can select it for use as a dynamic archiving path.
- **Add:** Lets you add the path specified in the *New path* field to the list.
- **Remove:** Lets you remove a selected path—which has previously been manually added—from the list. You cannot remove any of the initially listed paths, not even when they are selected.

## Video Recording

In XProtect Enterprise, the term *recording* means *saving video and, if applicable, audio from a camera in the camera's database on the surveillance system server*. Video/audio is often saved only when there is a reason to do so, for example as long as motion is detected, when an event occurs and until another event occurs, or within a certain period of time.

All properties on a white background are editable; properties on a light blue background cannot be edited. Note that all of the Video Recording properties can also be specified individually for each camera (see page 77).

- **Template:** The template can help you configure similar properties quickly. Say you have 50 cameras and you want 10 seconds of pre-recording on all of them. Instead of having to enter the same piece of information 50 times, you can simply enter it once in the template, and then apply the template to the 50 cameras with only two clicks.
- **Apply Template:** Lets you select which cameras you want to apply the template for. You then use one of the two *Set* buttons (see descriptions in the following) to actually apply the template.

**Tip:** To select all cameras in the list, click the *Select All* button.

- **Camera Name:** Name of the camera as it will appear in the Management Application as well as in clients. If required, you can overwrite the existing camera name with a new one. Camera names must be unique, and must not contain any of the following special characters: < > & ' " \ / : \* ? | [ ]
- **Record on:** Lets you select under which conditions video from the camera should be recorded:
  - **Always:** Record whenever the camera is enabled (see page 74) and scheduled to be online (see page 105). The latter allows for time-based recording).
  - **Never:** Never record. Live video will be displayed, but—since no video is kept in the database—users will not be able to play back video from the camera.
  - **Motion Detection:** Select this to record video in which motion (see page 81) is detected. Unless post-recording (see the following) is used, recording will stop immediately after the last motion is detected.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



- **Event:** Select this to record video when an event occurs and until another event occurs. Use of recording on event requires that events (see page 114) have been defined, and that you select start and stop events in the neighboring columns.  
**Tip:** If you have not yet defined any suitable events, you can quickly do it: Use the *Configure events* list, located in the bottom left corner of the window.
- **Motion Detection & Event:** Select this to record video in which motion is detected, or when an event occurs and until another event occurs. Remember to select start and stop events in the neighboring columns.
- **Start Event:** Use when recording on Event or Motion Detection & Event. Select required start event. Recording will begin when the start event occurs (or earlier if using pre-recording; see the following).
- **Stop Event:** Select required stop event. Recording will end when the stop event occurs (or later if using post-recording; see the following).
- **Pre-recording:** You can store recordings from periods preceding detected motion and/or start events. Select check box to enable this feature. Remember to specify required number of seconds in the neighboring column.

**How does pre- and post-recording work?** XProtect Enterprise receives video in a continuous stream from the camera whenever the camera is enabled and scheduled to be online. This is what lets you view live video, but it also means that XProtect Enterprise can easily store received video for a number of seconds in its memory (a.k.a. buffering). If it turns out that the buffered video is needed for pre- or post-recording, it is automatically appended to the recording. If not, it is simply discarded.

- **Seconds [of pre-recording]:** Specify the number of seconds for which you want to record video from before recording start conditions (that is motion or start event) are met. Usually, only some seconds of pre-recording is required, but you can specify up to 65535 seconds of pre-recording, corresponding to 18 hours, 12 minutes and 15 seconds. However, if specifying a very long pre-recording time, you can potentially run into a scenario where your pre-recording time spans scheduled or unscheduled archiving times (read more about archiving on page 92). That can be problematic since pre-recording does not work well during archiving.
- **Post-recording:** You can store recordings from periods following detected motion and/or stop events. Select check box to enable this feature. Remember to specify required number of seconds in the neighboring column.
- **Seconds [of post-recording]:** Specify the number of seconds for which you want to record video from after recording stop conditions (that is motion or stop event) are met. Usually, only some seconds of post-recording is required, but you can specify up to 65535 seconds of post-recording, corresponding to 18 hours, 12 minutes and 15 seconds. However, if specifying a very long post-recording time, you can potentially run into a scenario where your post-recording time spans scheduled or unscheduled archiving times. That can be problematic since post-recording does not work well during archiving.
- **Camera:** Click the **Open** button to configure detailed and/or camera-specific settings (such as event notification, PTZ preset positions, and fisheye view areas) for the selected camera.
- **Select All:** Click button to select all cameras in the *Apply Template* column.
- **Clear All:** Click button to clear all selections in the *Apply Template* column.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



- **Set selected template value on selected cameras:** Lets you apply only a selected value from the template to selected cameras.

Start Event	Stop Event	Pre-recording	Seconds	Post-recording	Seconds
-	-	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	3

Example: Only the selected value is applied using this method

- **Set all template values on selected cameras:** Lets you apply all values from the template to selected cameras.

## Manual Recording

When you configure video and recording, you can specify certain properties for many cameras in one go. In the case of Manual recording, it is simply because the properties are shared by all cameras.

When manual recording is enabled, Smart Client users with the necessary rights (see page 136) can manually start recording if they see something of interest while viewing live video from a camera which is not already recording.

If enabled, manual recording can thus take place even if recording for individual cameras (see page 77) is set to *Never* or *Conditionally*.

When started from the Smart Client, such user-driven recording will always take place for a fixed time, for example for five minutes.

- **Enable manual recording:** Select check box to enable manual recording and specify further details.
- **Default duration of manual recording:** Period of time (in seconds) during which user-driven recording will take place. Default duration is 300 seconds, corresponding to five minutes.
- **Maximum duration of manual recording:** Maximum allowed period of time for user-driven recording. This maximum is not relevant in connection with manual recording started from the Smart Client, since such manual recording will always take place for a fixed time. In some installations it is, however, also possible to combine manual recording with third-party applications if integrating these with XProtect Enterprise through an API or similar, and in such cases specifying a maximum duration may be relevant. If you are simply using manual recording in connection with the Smart Client, disregard this property.

## Frame Rate – MJPEG

With MJPEG, you can define frame rates for regular as well as speedup modes. All properties on a white background are editable; properties on a light blue background cannot be edited. Note that all of the Frame Rate - MJPEG properties can also be specified individually for each camera using MJPEG (see page 74).

## Template and Common Properties

- **Template:** The template can help you configure similar properties quickly. Say you have 50 cameras and you want a particular frame rate on all of them. Instead of having to enter the same piece of information 50 times, you can simply enter it once in the template, and

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



then apply the template to the 50 cameras with only two clicks.

- **Apply Template:** Lets you select which cameras you want to apply the template for. You then use one of the two *Set* buttons (see descriptions in the following) to actually apply the template.

**Tip:** To select all cameras in the list, click the *Select All* button.

- **Select All:** Click button to select all cameras in the *Apply Template* column.
- **Clear All:** Click button to clear all selections in the *Apply Template* column
- **Set selected template value on selected cameras:** Lets you apply only a selected value from the template to selected cameras.

Live Frame Rate	Recording Frame Rate	Time Unit
20	10,00	Second

Example: Only the selected value is applied using this method

- **Set all template values on selected cameras:** Lets you apply all values from the template to selected cameras.
- **Camera Name:** Name of the camera as it will appear in the Management Application as well as in clients. If required, you can overwrite the existing camera name with a new one. Camera names must be unique, and must not contain any of the following special characters: < > & ' " \ / : \* ? | [ ]

## Regular Frame Rate Properties

- **Live frame rate:** Required average frame rate for live video from the camera. Select number of frames, then select required interval (per second, minute or hour) in the *Frame Rate Time Base* column.
- **Recording frame rate:** Required average frame rate for recorded video from the camera. Select number of frames, then select required interval (per second, minute or hour) in the *Frame Rate Time Base* column.
- **Frame Rate Time Base:** Select required unit for live and recording frame rates (per second, minute, or hour).
- **Camera:** Click the **Open** button to configure detailed and/or camera-specific settings (such as event notification, PTZ preset positions, and fisheye view areas) for the selected camera.

## Speedup Frame Rate Properties

- **Enable Speedup:** The speedup feature lets you use a higher than normal frame rate if motion is detected and/or an event occurs. When you enable speedup, further columns for specifying speedup details become available.
- **Live Frame Rate:** Required average speedup frame rate for viewing live video from the camera. Select number of frames, then select required interval (per second, minute or hour) in the *Frame Rate Time Base* column. The frame rate must be higher than the live frame rate specified under normal mode.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



- **Recording frame rate:** Required average speedup frame rate for viewing recorded video from the camera. Select number of frames, then select required interval (per second, minute or hour) in the *Frame Rate Time Base* column. The frame rate must be higher than the recording frame rate specified under normal mode.
- **Frame Rate Time Base:** Select required unit for live and recording speedup frame rates (per second, minute, or hour). Note that you can only select time bases that let you speed up frame rates. Example: If you have specified 15 frames per *second* in normal mode, you cannot specify 16 frames per *minute* or *hour* in speedup mode.
- **Speedup on:** Lets you select under which conditions to use speedup frame rates:
  - **Motion Detection:** Select this to speed up when motion (see page 81) is detected. Normal frame rates will be resumed immediately after the last motion is detected.
  - **Event:** Select this to speed up when an event occurs and until another event occurs. Use of speedup on event requires that events (see page 114) have been defined, and that you select start and stop events in the neighboring columns.  
**Tip:** If you have not yet defined any suitable events, you can quickly do it: Use the *Configure events* list, located in the bottom left corner of the window.
  - **Motion Detection & Event:** Select this to speed up when motion is detected, or when an event occurs and until another event occurs. Remember to select start and stop events in the neighboring columns.
  - **Schedule only:** Select this to speed up according to the camera's speedup schedule (see page 106) only.
- **Start Event:** Select required start event. The camera will begin using the speedup frame rates when the start event occurs.
- **Stop Event:** Select required start event. The camera will return to the normal frame rates when the stop event occurs.
- **Camera:** Click the **Open** button to configure detailed and/or camera-specific settings (such as event notification, PTZ preset positions, and fisheye view areas) for the selected camera.

## Frame Rate – MPEG

All properties on a white background are editable; properties on a **light blue background** cannot be edited. Note that the Frame Rate - MPEG properties can also be specified individually for each camera using MPEG (see page 74).

- **Template:** The template can help you configure similar properties quickly. Say you have 50 cameras and you want a particular frame rate on all of them. Instead of having to enter the same piece of information 50 times, you can simply enter it once in the template, and then apply the template to the 50 cameras with only two clicks.
- **Apply Template:** Lets you select which cameras you want to apply the template for. You then use one of the two *Set* buttons (see descriptions in the following) to actually apply the template.

**Tip:** To select all cameras in the list, click the *Select All* button.



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



- **Camera Name:** Name of the camera as it will appear in the Management Application as well as in clients. If required, you can overwrite the existing camera name with a new one. Camera names must be unique, and must not contain any of the following special characters: < > & ' " \ / : \* ? | [ ]
- **Live FPS:** Lets you select the camera's live frame rate per second (FPS).
- **Record Keyframe Only:** Keyframes stored at specified intervals record the entire view of the camera, whereas the following frames record only pixels that change; this helps greatly reduce the size of MPEG files. Select the check box if you only want to record keyframes. Note that you can specify exceptions in the neighboring column.
- **Record All Frames on:** Allows you to make exceptions if you have selected *Record Keyframes Only*:
  - **Motion Detection:** Select this to record all frames when motion is detected. Two seconds after the last motion is detected, the camera will return to recording keyframes only.
  - **Event:** Select this to record all frames when an event occurs and until another event occurs. Requires that events (see page 114) have been defined, and that you select start and stop events in the neighboring columns.
  - **Tip:** If you have not yet defined any suitable events, you can quickly do it: Use the *Configure events* list, located in the bottom left corner of the window.
  - **Motion Detection & Event:** Select this to record all frames when motion is detected, or when an event occurs and until another event occurs. Remember to select start and stop events in the neighboring columns.
  - **Schedule only:** Select this to record all frames according to the camera's speedup schedule (see page 106) only.
- **Start Event:** Select required start event. The camera will begin recording all frames when the start event occurs.
- **Stop Event:** Select required stop event. The camera will return to only recording keyframes when the stop event occurs.
- **Camera:** Click the **Open** button to configure detailed and/or camera-specific settings (such as event notification, PTZ preset positions, and fisheye view areas) for the selected camera.
- **Select All:** Click button to select all cameras in the *Apply Template* column.
- **Clear All:** Click button to clear all selections in the *Apply Template* column.
- **Set selected template value on selected cameras:** Lets you apply only a selected value from the template to selected cameras.

Live FPS	Record Keyframes only	Record All Frames on	Start Event	Stop Event
25	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Event	Manual Event 1	Manual Event 2

Example: Only the selected value is applied using this method

- **Set all template values on selected cameras:** Lets you apply all values from the template to selected cameras.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## Audio Selection

With a default microphone selected for a camera, audio from the microphone and/or speaker will automatically be used when video from the camera is viewed. Note that all of the Audio Selection properties can also be specified individually for each camera (see page 74).

- **Template:** The template can help you configure similar properties quickly. Say you have 50 cameras and you want a particular default speaker for all of them. Instead of having to enter the same piece of information 50 times, you can simply enter it once in the template, and then apply the template to the 50 cameras with only two clicks.
- **Apply Template:** Lets you select which cameras you want to apply the template for. You then use one of the two *Set* buttons (see descriptions in the following) to actually apply the template.

**Tip:** To select all cameras in the list, click the *Select All* button.

- **Camera Name:** Name of the camera as it will appear in the Management Application as well as in clients. If required, you can overwrite the existing camera name with a new one. Camera names must be unique, and must not contain any of the following special characters: < > & ' " \ / : \* ? | [ ]
- **Default Microphone:** Select required default microphone.
- **Tip:** Note that you can select a microphone attached to another hardware device than the selected camera itself. This also applies when selecting default speakers.
- **Default Speaker:** Select required default speaker.
- **Camera:** Click the **Open** button to configure detailed and/or camera-specific settings (such as event notification, PTZ preset positions, and fisheye view areas) for the selected camera.
- **Select All:** Click button to select all cameras in the *Apply Template* column.
- **Clear All:** Click button to clear all selections in the *Apply Template* column.
- **Set selected template value on selected cameras:** Lets you apply only a selected value from the template to selected cameras.



Example: Only the selected value is applied using this method

- **Set all template values on selected cameras:** Lets you apply all values from the template to selected cameras.

## Audio Recording

Lets you determine whether audio should be recorded or not. Your choice will apply for all cameras on your XProtect Enterprise system.

- **Always:** Always record audio on all applicable cameras.



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



- **Never:** Never record audio on any cameras. Note that even though audio is never recorded, it will still be possible to listen to live audio in the Smart Client.

If you record audio, it is important that you note the following:

- **Only audio from microphones is recorded:** Only incoming audio, that is audio recorded by microphones attached to hardware devices, is recorded. Outgoing audio, that is what Smart Client (see page 163) operators say when they talk through speakers attached to hardware devices, is not recorded.
- **Audio recording affects video storage capacity:** Audio is recorded to the associated camera's database. It is thus important to bear in mind that the database is likely to become full earlier if recording audio *and* video than if only recording video. The fact that the database becomes full is not in itself a problem since XProtect Enterprise automatically archives data (see page 92) if the database becomes full. However, there is likely to be a greater need for archiving space if you record audio.
  - Example: If using MPEG4, each one-second video GOP (Group Of Pictures) will be stored in one record in the database. Each second of audio will also be stored in one record in the database. When this is the case, the database's video storage capacity will be halved, because half of the database's records will be used for storing audio. Consequently, the database will run full sooner, and automatic archiving will take place more often than if you were only recording video.
  - Example: If using MJPEG, audio is stored in one record for every JPEG for as long as the audio block size does not exceed the time between the JPEGs. The database's video storage capacity can thus in extreme cases be halved, because half of the database's records will be used for storing audio. If using very high frame rates, where there is less time between each JPEG, a smaller portion of the database will be used for storing audio records, and consequently a larger portion will be available for storing video. Anyway, the database will run full sooner, and automatic archiving will take place more often than if you were only recording video.

Above examples are simplified, the exact available video storage capacity will also depend on GOP/JPEG and audio kilobyte size.

## Storage Information

Lets you view how much storage space you have on your XProtect Enterprise system—and not least how much of it is free:

- **Drive:** Letter representing the drive in question, for example C:.
- **Path:** Path to the storage area, for example C:\ or \\OurServer\OurFolder\OurSubfolder\.
- **Usage:** What the storage area is used for, for example recording or archiving.
- **Drive Size:** Total size of the drive.
- **Video Data:** Amount of video data on the drive.
- **Other Data:** Amount of other data on the drive.
- **Free Space:** Amount of unused space left on the drive.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



**Tip:** To quickly view disk space usage in a pie chart format, select the line representing the drive you are interested in.

## Camera-specific Configuration

To specify video, recording and camera-specific settings (such as event notification, PTZ preset positions, and fisheye view areas) for each individual camera.

1. In the Management Application's navigation pane, expand *Advanced Configuration*, and expand *Cameras and Storage Information*.
2. Right-click the required camera, and select *Properties*.
3. Specify properties as required for Camera, Frame Rate, Video, Audio, Recording, Recording & Archiving Paths, Event Notification, Output, Motion Detection & Exclude Regions, and—if applicable—Fisheye, PTZ Preset Positions, PTZ Patrolling, and PTZ on Event. All of the properties are described on the following pages.
4. Save your configuration changes by clicking the *Save Configuration* button in the Management Application's toolbar.

## Camera

- **Enabled:** Cameras are by default enabled, meaning that provided they are scheduled to be online (see page 105), they are able to transfer video to XProtect Enterprise. If required, you can disable an individual camera, in which case no video/audio will be transferred from the camera source to XProtect Enterprise.
- **Camera name:** Name of the camera as it will appear in the Management Application as well as in clients. If required, you can overwrite the existing camera name with a new one. Camera names must be unique, and must not contain any of the following special characters: < > & ' " \ / : \* ? | [ ]

**Tip:** Camera names can be very long if required: the upper limit is more than 2000 characters, although such long camera names are hardly ever needed.

- **Camera shortcut number:** Users of the Smart Client can take advantage of keyboard shortcuts, some of which let the users toggle between viewing different cameras. Such shortcuts include numbers which are used to identify each camera.

Shortcut numbers must be unique for each camera. A camera shortcut number must not contain any letters or special characters, and must not be longer than eight digits. Examples of correct camera shortcut numbers: 3, 12345678. Examples of incorrect camera shortcut numbers: Cam#3, 123456789.

More information about using the keyboard shortcuts is available in the separate documentation for the Smart Client. In other applications, such as the Remote Client, the camera shortcut numbers cannot be used.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## Frame Rate

### ***If the Camera Uses the MJPEG Video Format***

With MJPEG, you can define frame rates for regular as well as speedup modes:

#### **Regular Frame Rate Mode:**

- **Live frame rate:** Frame rate for viewing live video from the camera. Select number of frames in the first field, and required interval (per second, minute or hour) in the second field.
- **Recording frame rate:** Frame rate for viewing recorded video from the camera. Select number of frames in the first field, and required interval (per second, minute or hour) in the second field.

#### **Speedup Frame Rate Mode:**

- **Enable speedup frame rate:** The speedup feature lets you use a higher than normal frame rate if motion is detected and/or an event occurs. When you enable speedup, further fields for specifying speedup details become available.
- **Live frame rate:** Speedup frame rate for viewing live video from the camera. Select number of frames in the first field, and required interval (per second, minute or hour) in the second field. The frame rate must be higher than the live frame rate specified under normal mode.
- **Recording frame rate:** Speedup frame rate for viewing recorded video from the camera. Select number of frames in the first field, and required interval (per second, minute or hour) in the second field. The frame rate must be higher than the recording frame rate specified under normal mode.
- **On motion:** Select this check box to use the speedup frame rates when motion is detected. The camera will return to the normal frame rates two seconds after the last motion is detected.
- **On event:** Select this check box to use the speedup frame rates when an event occurs and until another event occurs. Use of speedup on event requires that events (see page 114) have been defined, and that you select start and stop events in the neighboring lists.

**Tip:** If you have not yet defined any suitable events, you can quickly do it: Use the [Configure events](#) list, located below the other fields.

- **Start event:** Select required start event. The camera will begin using the speedup frame rates when the start event occurs.
- **Stop event:** Select required start event. The camera will return to the normal frame rates when the stop event occurs.

**Tip:** Speedup does not necessarily have to be based on motion- or events; you can also use scheduling to configure speedup based on particular periods of time (see page 106). If you prefer such time-based speedup, you should still enable the use of speedup by selecting the *Enable speedup* check box.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## ***If the Camera Uses the MPEG Video Format***

With MPEG, you can define frame rate as well as when to record keyframes or all frames:

- **Frame rate per second:** Frame rate for viewing live and recorded video from the camera. Select number of frames per second.
- **Record keyframes only:** Keyframes stored at specified intervals record the entire view of the camera, whereas the following frames record only pixels that change; this helps greatly reduce the size of MPEG files. Select the check box if you only want to record keyframes. Note that you can specify exceptions if motion is detected or events occur (see the following).
- **Record all frames on motion:** Allows you to make exceptions if you have selected *record keyframes only*. Select this check box to record all frames when motion is detected. Two seconds after the last motion is detected, the camera will return to recording keyframes only.
- **Record all frames on event:** Allows you to make exceptions if you have selected *record keyframes only*. Select this check box to record all frames when an event occurs and until another event occurs. Use of this feature requires that events (see page 114) have been defined, and that you select start and stop events in the neighboring lists.

**Tip:** If you have not yet defined any suitable events, you can quickly do it: Use the *Configure events* list, located below the other fields.

- **Start event:** Select required start event. The camera will begin recording all frames when the start event occurs.
- **Stop event:** Select required start event. When the stop event occurs, the camera will return to recording keyframes only.

## **Video**

When you configure specific cameras, properties are to a large extent camera-specific. Since such properties vary from camera to camera, descriptions in the following are for guidance only.

If the selected camera is accessible, a live preview is displayed. Click the *Configure Video Properties* button to open a separate window with properties for the selected camera.

The video properties typically let you control bandwidth, brightness, compression, contrast, resolution, rotation, etc. by overwriting existing values or selecting new ones.

When adjusting video settings, you are—for most cameras—able to preview the effect of your settings in an image below the fields.

Video settings may feature an *Include Date and Time* setting. If set to *Yes*, date and time from the camera will be included in video. Note, however, that cameras are separate units which may have separate timing devices, power supplies, etc. Camera time and XProtect Enterprise system time may therefore not correspond fully, and this may occasionally lead to confusion. As all frames are time-stamped by XProtect Enterprise upon reception, and exact date and time information for each image is thus already known, it is recommended that the setting is set to *No*.

**Tip:** For consistent time synchronization, you may—if supported by the camera—automatically synchronize camera and system time through a time server.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## Audio

Lets you select a default microphone and/or speaker for the camera. With a default microphone and/or a speaker selected for a camera, audio from the microphone and/or a speaker will automatically be used when video from the camera is viewed.

If a microphone and/or a speaker is attached to the same hardware device as the camera, that microphone/speaker will be the camera's default microphone/speaker if you do not select otherwise.

**Tip:** Note that you can select a microphone and/or a speaker attached to another hardware device than the selected camera itself.

- **Default microphone:** Select required microphone.
- **Default speaker:** Select required speaker.

The ability to select a default microphone and/or a speaker for the camera requires that at least one microphone and/or speaker has been attached to a hardware device on the surveillance system.

## Recording Settings

In XProtect Enterprise, the term *recording* means *saving video and, if applicable, audio from a camera in the camera's database on the surveillance system server*. Video/audio is often saved only when there is a reason to do so, for example as long as motion is detected, when an event occurs and until another event occurs, or within a certain period of time. When you configure specific cameras, recording properties include:

- **Always:** Record whenever the camera is enabled (see page 74) and scheduled to be online. The latter allows for time-based recording; see also page 105.
- **Never:** Never record. Live video will be displayed, but—since no video is kept in the database—users will not be able to play back video from the camera.
- **Conditionally:** Record when certain conditions are met. When you select this option, specify required conditions (see the following).
- **On built-in motion detection:** Select this check box to record video in which motion (see page 81) is detected. Unless post-recording (see the following) is used, recording will stop immediately after the last motion is detected.
- **On event:** Select this check box to record video when an event occurs and until another event occurs. Use of recording on event requires that events (see page 114) have been defined, and that you select start and stop events in the neighboring lists.

**Tip:** If you have not yet defined any suitable events, you can quickly do it: Use the *Configure events* list, located below the other fields.

- **Start event:** Select required start event. Recording will begin when the start event occurs (or earlier if using pre-recording; see the following).
- **Stop event:** Select required start event. Recording will end when the stop event occurs (or later if using post-recording; see the following).

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



When the option *Conditionally* is selected, you can store recordings from periods preceding and following detected motion and/or specified events. Example: If you have defined that video should be stored when a door is opened, being able to see what happened immediately prior to the door being opened may also be important. Say you have specified that video should be stored conditionally on event, with a start event called Door Opened and a stop event called Door Closed. With three seconds of pre-recording, video will be recorded from three seconds before Door Opened occurs and until Door Closed occurs.

- **Enable pre-recording:** Available only when the option *Conditional* is selected. Specify the number of seconds for which you want to record video from before recording start conditions (that is motion or start event) are met.
- **Enable post-recording:** Available only when the option *Conditional* is selected. Specify the number of seconds for which you want to record video after recording stop conditions (that is motion end or stop event) are met.

**How does pre- and post-recording work?** XProtect Enterprise receives video in a continuous stream from the camera whenever the camera is enabled and scheduled to be online. This is what lets you view live video, but it also means that XProtect Enterprise can easily store received video for a number of seconds in its memory (a.k.a. buffering). If it turns out that the buffered video is needed for pre- or post-recording, it is automatically appended to the recording. If not, it is simply discarded.

Note that manual recording (see page 68) may be enabled. With manual recording, Smart Client users with the necessary rights (see page 136) can manually start recording if they see something of interest while viewing live video from a camera which is not already recording. If enabled, manual recording can thus take place even if recording for individual cameras is set to *Never* or *Conditionally*.

## Recording & Archiving Paths

- **Recording path:** Path to the folder in which the camera's database should be stored. Default is C:\MediaDatabase. To browse for another folder, click the browse button next to the *Recording path* field. You are only able to specify a path to a folder on a *local* drive. If using a network drive, it would not be possible to save recordings if the network drive became unavailable.

If you change the recording path, and there are existing recordings at the old location, you will be asked whether you want to move the recordings to the new location (recommended), leave them at the old location, or delete them.

**Tip:** If you have several cameras, and several local drives are available, you can improve performance by distributing individual cameras' databases across several drives.

- **Delete Database:** Click button to delete all recordings in the database for the camera. Archived recordings will not be affected.

**IMPORTANT:** Use with caution; all recordings in the database for the camera will be permanently deleted. As a security measure, you will be asked to confirm the deletion.

- **Archiving path:** Only available if not using dynamic paths for archiving. Path to the folder in which the camera's archived recordings should be stored. Default is C:\MediaDatabase\Archives. To browse for another folder, click the browse button next to the *Archiving path* field. You can specify a path to local or networked drive as required. If you change the archiving path, and there are existing archived recordings at the old location, you will be asked whether you want to move the archived recordings to the new



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



location (recommended), leave them at the old location, or delete them. Note that if moving archived recordings, XProtect Enterprise will also archive what is currently in the camera's database; in case you wonder why the camera database is empty just after you have moved archived recordings, this is the reason.

- **Delete Archives:** Click button to delete all archived recordings for the camera. Recordings in the camera's regular database will not be affected. The ability to delete is available regardless of whether you use a single archiving path or dynamic archiving paths.

**IMPORTANT:** Use with caution; all archived recordings for the camera will be permanently deleted. As a security measure, you will be asked to confirm the deletion.

- **Retention time:** Total amount of time for which you want to keep recordings from the camera (that is recordings in the camera's database as well as any archived recordings). Default is 30 days.

Note that the retention time covers the **total** amount of time you want to keep recordings for; in earlier XProtect Enterprise versions time limits were specified separately for the database and archives.

- **Database repair action:** Select which action to take if the database becomes corrupted:
  - *Repair, scan, delete if fails:* Default action. If the database becomes corrupted, two different repair methods will be attempted: a fast repair and a thorough repair. If both repair methods fail, the contents of the database will be deleted.
  - *Repair, delete if fails:* If the database becomes corrupted, a fast repair will be attempted. If the fast repair fails, the contents of the database will be deleted.
  - *Repair, archive if fails:* If the database becomes corrupted, a fast repair will be attempted. If the fast repair fails, the contents of the database will be archived.
  - *Delete (no repair):* If the database becomes corrupted, the contents of the database will be deleted.
  - *Archive (no repair):* If the database becomes corrupted, the contents of the database will be archived.

No video can be recorded in a database while it is being repaired. For large installations, a repair may take several hours, especially if the *Repair, scan, delete if fails* action (which involves two different repair methods) is selected, and the first repair method (fast repair) fails.

**Why archive a corrupt database?** Provided the corrupt database has been archived, it can often be repaired by the Viewer (see page 181): Open the Viewer and attempt to browse the archived recordings from the camera in question. Browsing will initially fail, but this will make the Viewer start repairing the corrupt database.

**Tip:** There are several things you can do to prevent that your databases become corrupt in the first place. See [Protect Recording Databases from Corruption](#) on page 160.

- **Configure Dynamic Paths:** With dynamic archiving paths, you specify a number of different archiving paths, usually across several drives. If the drive containing the camera's database is among the path you have selected for dynamic archiving, XProtect Enterprise will always try to archive to that path first. If not, XProtect Enterprise automatically archives to the archiving drive with the most available space at any time, provided there is not a camera database using that drive. See also [Dynamic Path Selection](#) on page 65.



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## Event Notification

Event notification lets you inform Remote Client and Smart Client users that an event (see page 114) has occurred on the XProtect Enterprise system. Event notification can be valuable for client users, as they will be able to quickly detect that an event has occurred, even though their focus was perhaps on something else the moment the event occurred.

**Tip:** Even though event notification is configured separately for each camera, you can select between all events on your XProtect Enterprise system, regardless whether events are manual, generic, or originate on another hardware device than the camera itself.

In the Remote Client/Smart Client, event notification is given by a yellow indicator ■ which lights up when a relevant event has taken place. An optional sound on event notification can furthermore be configured in the Smart Client itself.

In the clients, three differently colored indicators are available for each camera:

- The yellow ■ event indicator. When event notification is used for a camera, the yellow indicator will light up when a relevant event has occurred.
- A red ■ motion indicator; lights up when motion has been detected.
- An optional green ■ live indicator; lights up when video is received from the camera.



In the Smart Client, all three indicators are in effect optional since the blue bar in which the indicators are displayed can be turned off in the Smart Client. If Smart Client users in your organization are going to rely on event notification, make sure they do not switch the blue bars off.

To select an event for use with event notification, do the following:

1. In the *Available events* list, select the required event. It is only possible to select one event at a time.

**Tip:** If you have not yet defined any suitable events, you can quickly do it: Use the *Configure events* list, located below the other fields.

2. Click the >> button to copy the selected event to the *Selected Events* list.
3. Repeat for each required event.

If you later want to remove an event from the *Selected Events* list, simply select the event in question, and click the << button.

## Output

Lets you associate a camera with particular hardware output (see page 124), for example the sounding of a siren or the switching on of lights. Associated output can then be activated automatically when motion is detected in video from the camera, or manually when Smart Client or Remote Client users with the necessary rights (see page 136) view live video from the camera.

1. In the *Available output* list, select the required output. It is only possible to select one output at a time.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



**Tip:** If you have not yet defined any suitable output, you can quickly do it: Use the *Configure Output* button, located below the other fields.

**Tip:** Even though output is configured separately for each camera, you can select between all output on your XProtect Enterprise system, regardless whether output originates on another hardware device than the camera itself.

2. Click the >> button to copy the selected output to:
  - the *On manual activation* list, in which case the output will be available for manual activation in the Smart Client and Remote Client.
  - and/or -
  - the *On motion detected* list, in which case the output will be activated when motion is detected in video from the camera.

If required, the same output can appear on both lists.

3. Repeat for each required output.

If you later want to remove an output from the one of the lists, simply select the output in question, and click the << button.

## Motion Detection & Exclude Regions

When you configure specific cameras, adjusting motion detection is important since it may determine when video from the camera is recorded, when e-mail notifications are generated, when hardware output (such as lights or sirens) is activated, etc. Time spent on finding the best possible motion detection settings for each camera may help you later avoid unnecessary recordings, notifications, etc. Depending on the physical location of the camera, it may be a very good idea to test motion detection under different physical conditions (day/night, windy/calm weather, etc.).

Cameras that do not support multiple simultaneous video streams will not be able to connect to the surveillance server and the Management Application at the same time; therefore it is recommended to stop the Recording Server service (see page 127) when configuring such devices for motion detection and PTZ. See also page 90.

Before you configure motion detection for a camera, it is highly recommended that you have configured the camera's video properties, such as compression, resolution, etc. (see page 76). When ready, do the following:

1. Ask yourself whether there are any areas which should be excluded from motion detection (for example if the camera covers an area where a tree is swaying in the wind or where cars regularly pass by in the background). If so, you can avoid detection of irrelevant motion by following the points below. If not, continue to step 2.
  - In the *Exclude regions* section in lower part of the window, select **Enable**. The preview image is now divided into small sections by a grid. To define areas which should be excluded from motion detection, drag the mouse pointer over the required areas in the preview image while pressing the mouse button down. Left mouse button selects a grid section; right mouse button clears a grid section. Selected areas are highlighted in blue. Occasionally, you may also want to take advantage of further exclude regions features:
  - **Show grid:** Lets you toggle the grid on and off. Toggling the grid off may provide a less obscured view of the preview image; selection of areas which should be

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



excluded from motion detection takes place the same way as when the grid is visible.

- **Set All:** Lets you quickly select all grid sections in the preview image. This may be advantageous if you want to exclude motion detection in most areas of the image, in which case you can simply clear the few sections in which you do not want to exclude motion detection.
- **Clear All:** Lets you quickly clear all grid sections in the preview image.
- **Auto:** Makes XProtect Enterprise automatically detect areas with insignificant changes in individual pixels which should not be regarded as motion, and automatically mark such areas for exclusion from motion detection. As the automatic detection is based on an analysis of one second of video, it may take a short while before you see the result.

The automatic detection takes place according to the sensitivity setting specified in step 2. In order for the Auto feature to work as intended, it is therefore recommended that you go to step 2 and specify a sensitivity setting that matches your requirements before using the Auto feature.

2. Use the two sliders for configuring motion detection:

- **Sensitivity:** Determines how much each pixel must change before it is regarded as motion. With a high sensitivity, very little change in a pixel is required before it is regarded as motion. Areas in which motion is detected are highlighted in green in the preview image. Select a slider position in which only detections you consider motion are highlighted. As an alternative to using the slider, you may specify a value between 0 and 256 in the field next to the slider to control the sensitivity setting.

**Tip:** If you find the concept of sensitivity difficult to grasp, try dragging the slider to its leftmost position: The more you drag the slider to the left, the more of the preview image becomes highlighted. This is because with a high sensitivity even the slightest change in a pixel will be regarded as motion.

- **Motion:** Determines how many pixels must change in the image before it is regarded as motion. The selected level is indicated by the black vertical line in the motion level indication bar below the preview image. The black vertical line serves as a threshold: When detected motion is above (that is to the right of) the selected sensitivity level, the bar changes color from green to red, indicating a positive detection. As an alternative to using the slider, you may specify a value between 0 and 10000 in the field next to the slider to control the motion setting.



3. Specify required **Motion detection interval**, that is how often motion detection analysis should be carried out on video from the camera. The interval is measured in milliseconds; default is 240 milliseconds (that is close to once every quarter of a second). The interval is applied regardless of the camera's frame rate settings.

## **Motion Detection and PTZ Cameras**

Motion detection generally works the same way for PTZ (Pan/Tilt/Zoom) cameras as it does for regular cameras. However:

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



- It is not possible to configure motion detection separately for each of a PTZ camera's preset positions.
- In order not to activate unwanted recording, notifications, etc., motion detection is automatically disabled while a PTZ camera moves between two preset positions. After a number of seconds—the so-called transition time, specified as part of the PTZ camera's PTZ patrolling properties (see page 86)—motion detection is automatically enabled again.

## Fisheye

When you configure specific cameras, fisheye properties may be available. Fisheye is a technology that allows viewing of 360-degree panoramic video through an advanced lens. You will not see the fisheye properties until certain conditions are met: The camera must be either a dedicated fisheye camera or be equipped with a special fisheye lens. A special fisheye license key is also required; you enter the key when you configure the hardware device to which the fisheye camera is attached (see page 60).












You configure the camera's fisheye functionality by adjusting its fisheye view field, indicated by a green circle in the fisheye view, until the circle encloses the actual image area of the fisheye lens. Your settings are then used by the fisheye technology for converting the circular fisheye view into a flattened rectangular view.



- **Ceiling mount:** If the camera is mounted on a ceiling, you can adjust properties to reflect this by selecting the check box.
- **Resolution:** Resolution values are automatically displayed above the fisheye image. When using fisheye, resolution will automatically be set to the highest possible value.
- **X radius:** Controls the horizontal (X) radius of the green circle. Move the slider to the left for a narrower circle, or to the right for a wider circle. Alternatively, specify a value between 0 and 800 in the field next to the slider. 0 corresponds to the slider's leftmost position, 800 corresponds to the slider's rightmost position.
- **Y radius:** Controls the vertical (Y) radius of the green circle. Move the slider to the left for a flat circle, or to the right for a taller circle. Alternatively, specify a value between 0 and 800 in the field next to the slider.
- **X center:** Controls the horizontal (X) position of the green circle. Move the slider to the left or right as required. Alternatively, specify a value between 0 and 800 in the field next to the slider.
- **Y center:** Controls the vertical (Y) position of the green circle. Move the slider to the left in order to move the circle up, or to the right in order to move the circle down. Alternatively, specify a value between 0 and 800 in the field next to the slider.
- **Enable preview:** Lets you toggle between viewing the circular fisheye view and the flattened rectangular view resulting from your settings. When previewing the flattened view, the following navigation buttons become available for moving around within the flattened view:
  - **Set as Home:** Use after navigating to a suitable viewpoint using the navigation buttons. Sets the current viewpoint as home position (that is default position), so that when client users viewing the camera click their clients' *Home* button, their view of the camera changes to that position.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



- |   |  |
|---|--|
|    | Moves the flattened view up and to the left                              |
|    | Moves the flattened view up  |
|    | Moves the flattened view up and to the right                             |
|    | Moves the flattened view to the left                                     |
|    | Moves the flattened view to its home position (that is default position) |
|    | Moves the flattened view to the right                                    |
|    | Moves the flattened view down and to the left                            |
|    | Moves the flattened view down  |
|    | Moves the flattened view down and to the right                           |
|   | Zooms out (one zoom level per click)                                     |
|  | Zooms in (one zoom level per click)                                      |

## PTZ Preset Positions

PTZ-related properties are only available when you are dealing with a PTZ (Pan/Tilt/Zoom) camera. PTZ preset positions can be used for making the PTZ camera automatically go to a particular position when particular events occur, and when setting up PTZ patrolling profiles (see page 86). Preset positions also become selectable in clients, allowing users with required rights (see page 136) to move the PTZ camera between preset positions.

Names of preset positions must contain only the characters A-Z, a-z and the digits 0-9. If you import preset positions from cameras (see the following), verify that their names do not contain other characters; if they do, change the preset position names before importing them.

Restart services (see page 127) after having made changes to PTZ settings.

Cameras that do not support multiple simultaneous video streams will not be able to connect to the surveillance server and the Management Application at the same time; therefore it is recommended to stop the Recording Server service (see page 127) when configuring such devices for motion detection and PTZ. See also page 90.

- **PTZ type:** Your configuration options depend on the type of PTZ camera in question:
  - Type 1 (stored on server): You define preset positions by moving the camera using the controls in the upper half of the window, then storing each required position on the XProtect Enterprise server. You can define up to 50 preset positions this way.
  - Type 2 (imported from camera): You import preset positions which have previously been defined and stored on the PTZ camera itself through the camera's own configuration interface. The number of allowed preset positions depends on the PTZ camera and driver used.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



- Type 3 (stored on camera): You define preset positions by moving the camera with the controls in the upper half of the window, then storing each required position in the camera's own memory. You are able to define up to 50 preset positions this way. If preset positions have already been defined for the camera, you can simply import them for use with XProtect Enterprise.

For PTZ types 1 and 3, you can move the PTZ camera to required positions:

- By simply clicking the required position in the camera preview (if supported by the camera).
- By using the sliders located near the camera preview to move the PTZ camera along each of its axes: the X-axis (for panning left/right), the Y-axis (for tilting up/down), and the Z-axis (for zooming in and out; to zoom in, move the slider towards *Tele*; to zoom out, move the slider towards *Wide*).



- By using the navigation buttons:



Moves the PTZ camera up and to the left



Moves the PTZ camera up



Moves the PTZ camera up and to the right



Moves the PTZ camera to the left



Moves the PTZ camera to its home position (that is default position)



Moves the PTZ camera to the right



Moves the PTZ camera down and to the left



Moves the PTZ camera down



Moves the PTZ camera down and to the right



Zooms out (one zoom level per click)



Zooms in (one zoom level per click)

- **Import / Refresh:** Only available when you have selected PTZ type 2 or 3. Lets you import already defined preset positions from the camera's memory for use with XProtect Enterprise. If you have already imported preset positions this way, and preset positions have since then been added or changed on the camera, you can use this button to refresh the imported preset positions.
- **Add New:** Only available when you have selected PTZ type 1. When you have move the camera to a required position using the controls in the upper half of the window, type a name for the position in the blank field, then click the button to add the position to the list





This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.

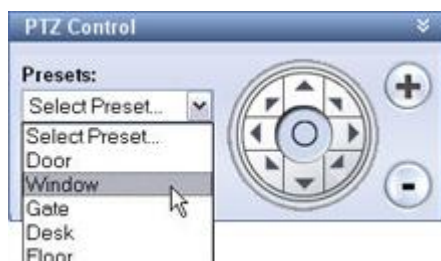


of defined preset positions. Remember that names of preset positions must contain only the characters A-Z, a-z and the digits 0-9.

- **Set New Position:** Only available when you have selected PTZ type 1 or 3. Lets you change an already defined preset position. In the list, select the preset position you want to change. Then move the camera to the new required position using the controls in the upper half of the window. Then click the button to overwrite the old position with the new one.
- **Delete:** Only available when you have selected PTZ type 1 or 3. Lets you delete an already defined preset. In the list, select the preset position you want to delete, then click the button.

Before you delete a preset position, make sure it is not used in PTZ patrolling (see page 86) or PTZ on event (see page 89). Since the preset positions are stored on the camera, you can bring a deleted preset position back into XProtect Enterprise by clicking the *Import / refresh* button. If you bring back a preset position this way, and the preset position is to be used in PTZ patrolling or PTZ on event, you must manually configure PTZ patrolling and/or PTZ on event to use the preset position again.

- **Test:** Lets you try out a preset position. In the list, select the preset position you want to test, then click the button to view the camera move to the selected position.
-  **and** : Lets you move a preset position selected in the list up and down respectively. The selected preset position is moved one step per click. By moving preset positions up or down, you can control the sequence in which preset positions are presented in clients.



Example from client: Users select preset positions from a list. By moving preset positions up or down during configuration on the server, you can control the sequence in which the preset positions are presented in clients.

## PTZ Patrolling

PTZ-related properties are only available when you are dealing with a PTZ (Pan/Tilt/Zoom) camera. PTZ patrolling is the continuous movement of a PTZ camera between a number of preset positions (see page 84). To use patrolling, you should normally have specified at least two preset positions for the PTZ camera in question. To configure PTZ patrolling, you basically select a patrolling profile in the *Patrolling profiles* list, then specify required properties to define the exact behavior of the patrolling profile.

**Tip:** Although it is technically not patrolling, specifying a patrolling profile with only one preset position is possible. A patrolling profile with only one preset position can, when combined with scheduling, be useful in two cases: For moving a PTZ camera to a specific position at a specific time, and for moving a PTZ camera to a specific position upon manual control of the PTZ camera.

Restart services (see page 127) after having made changes to PTZ settings. When you have defined your patrolling profiles, also remember to schedule the use of patrolling profiles (see page 108). Bear in mind that patrolling can be overridden if users (with the required rights (see page 136)) manually operate PTZ cameras.



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



Cameras that do not support multiple simultaneous video streams will not be able to connect to the surveillance server and the Management Application at the same time; therefore it is recommended to stop the Recording Server service (see page 127) when configuring such devices for motion detection and PTZ. See also page 90.

## Patrolling Profiles

A PTZ camera may patrol according to several different patrolling profiles. For example, a PTZ camera in a supermarket may patrol according to one patrolling profile during opening hours, and according to another patrolling profile when the supermarket is closed. The *Patrolling profiles* list lets you select which patrolling profile to configure.

- **Add New:** Lets you add a new patrolling profile to the list. When you add a new patrolling profile, you can either give it a unique name, or reuse an existing name from another PTZ camera with PTZ patrolling.

Using several identically named patrolling profiles can be advantageous when you later configure scheduling. Example: If you have configured patrolling profiles identically named Night Patrolling on 25 different cameras, you can schedule the use of Night Patrolling on all 25 cameras in one go, even though Night Patrolling covers individual preset positions on each of the 25 cameras.

- **Delete:** Lets you delete an existing patrolling profile. Note that the selected patrolling profile will be removed from the list without further warning.




**There are already some patrolling profiles listed, why?** Names of patrolling profile defined for other cameras can be reused. This allows you to use a single patrolling profile name across several PTZ cameras, and this can make scheduling of PTZ patrolling (see page 108) much easier. Despite the fact that several PTZ cameras share a patrolling profile name, the movement between preset positions is of course individual for each camera.


## Preset Positions to Use in Patrolling Profiles

Having selected a patrolling profile in the *Patrolling profiles* list, you can specify which of the PTZ camera's preset positions should be used for the selected patrolling scheme:

1. In the *Preset Positions* list, select the preset positions you want to use. A preset position can be used more than once in a patrol scheme, for example if the preset position covers an especially important location.

**Tip:** By pressing the CTRL button on your keyboard while selecting from the *Preset Positions* list, you can select several or all of list's preset positions in one go.

2. Click the  button to copy the selected preset positions to the *Patrolling list*.
3. The camera will move between preset positions in the sequence they appear in the *Patrolling list*, starting at the preset position listed first. If you want to change the sequence of preset positions in the *Preset Positions* list, select a preset position, and use the  or  buttons to move the selected preset position up or down in the list. The selected preset position is moved one step per click.

If you later want to remove a preset position from the *Patrolling list*, select the preset position in question, and click the  button.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## Wait and Transition Timing

- **Wait time (sec.):** Lets you specify the number of seconds for which the PTZ camera should stay at each preset position before it moves on to the next preset position. Default is 10 seconds. The wait time applies to all presets in the patrolling profile, that is the PTZ camera will stay at each preset position for the same number of seconds.
- **Transition time (sec.):** Lets you specify the number of seconds required for the PTZ camera to move from one preset position to another. Default is five seconds. During this transition time, motion detection is automatically disabled, as irrelevant motion is otherwise likely to be detected while the camera moves between the preset positions. After the specified number of seconds, motion detection is automatically enabled again.

The transition time applies to all presets in the patrolling profile. It is thus important that the camera is able to reach between any of the patrolling profile's preset positions within the number of seconds you specify. If not, false motion is likely to be detected. Bear in mind that it takes longer for the PTZ camera to move between positions that are located physically far apart (for example from an extreme left position to an extreme right position) than between positions that are located physically close together.

**Tip:** Note that wait time and transition time settings are tied to the selected patrolling profile. This allows you the flexibility of having different wait time and transition time settings for different patrolling profiles on the same camera.

## PTZ Scanning

PTZ scanning (continuous panning) is supported on a few PTZ cameras only.

- **PTZ scanning:** Only available if your camera supports PTZ scanning. Lets you enable PTZ scanning and select a PTZ scanning speed from the list below the check box.

Note that PTZ scanning only works for PTZ type 1 cameras (where preset positions are configured and stored on the XProtect Enterprise server). If the camera is a PTZ type 2 camera, and you import preset positions which have previously been defined and stored on the PTZ camera itself through the camera's own configuration interface, PTZ scanning will stop working. For more information about PTZ types, see PTZ Preset Positions on page 84.

## Pause and Resume PTZ Patrolling

PTZ patrolling is automatically paused when the camera is operated manually as well as if PTZ on Event (see page 89) is used. PTZ patrolling can furthermore be paused if motion is detected.

**Tip:** Note that pause settings are tied to the selected patrolling profile. This allows you the flexibility of having different pause settings for different patrolling profiles on the same camera.

- **Pause patrolling if motion is detected:** To pause PTZ patrolling when motion is detected, so that the PTZ camera will remain at the position where motion was detected for a specified period of time, do the following:
  1. Select the *Pause patrolling schedule if motion is detected* check box.
  2. Select whether the PTZ camera should resume patrolling:
    - After a certain number of seconds has passed since first detection of motion, regardless whether further motion is detected

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



- or -

- After a certain number of seconds has passed without further detection of motion

3. Specify the required number of seconds for the selected option (default is ten and five seconds respectively).

Unless transition time (see the previous information under *Wait and Transition Timing ...*) is set to zero, motion detection is automatically disabled while the camera moves between preset positions, as irrelevant motion is otherwise likely to be detected while the camera moves between the preset positions.

- **Resume PTZ patrolling after:** PTZ patrolling is automatically paused when the camera is operated manually as well as if PTZ on Event is used. You can specify how many seconds should pass before the regular patrolling is resumed after a manual or event-based interruption. Default is 30 seconds.

Users of the Smart Client are—in addition to manual control—able to stop a selected PTZ camera's patrolling entirely. This takes place through a context menu in the Smart Client view. For Smart Client users, the number of seconds specified in the Patrolling settings section therefore only applies when users manually control a PTZ camera; not when users stop a PTZ camera's patrolling entirely. When Smart Client users stop a PTZ camera's patrolling entirely, the camera's patrolling will resume only when the Smart Client user selects to resume it.

## PTZ on Event

PTZ-related properties are only available when you are dealing with a PTZ (Pan/Tilt/Zoom) camera. When a PTZ camera supports preset positions (see page 84), it is possible to make the PTZ camera automatically go to a particular preset position when a particular event (see page 114) occurs.

Restart services (see page 127) after having made changes to PTZ settings.

Cameras that do not support multiple simultaneous video streams will not be able to connect to the surveillance server and the Management Application at the same time; therefore it is recommended to stop the Recording Server service (see page 127) when configuring such devices for motion detection and PTZ. See also page 90.

When associating events with preset positions on a PTZ camera, you are able to select between **all** events defined on your XProtect Enterprise system; you are not limited to selecting events defined on a particular hardware device.

1. In the *Events* list in the left side of the window, select the required event.

**Tip:** If you have not yet defined any suitable events, you can quickly do it: Use the *Configure events* list, located below the other fields.

2. In the *PTZ Preset Position* list in the right side of the window, select the required preset position.

For this purpose, you can only use an event once per PTZ camera. However, different events can be used for making the PTZ camera go to the same preset position. Example:

- Event 1 makes the PTZ camera go to preset position A

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



- Event 2 makes the PTZ camera go to preset position B
- Event 3 makes the PTZ camera go to preset position A

If you later want to end the association between a particular event and a particular preset position, simply clear the field containing the event.

## ***Configure When Cameras Should Do What***

Use XProtect Enterprise's scheduling feature to configure when:

- Cameras should be online (that is transfer video to XProtect Enterprise)
- Cameras should use speedup (that is use a higher than normal frame rate)
- You want to receive any e-mail and/or SMS notifications regarding cameras
- PTZ cameras should patrol, and according to which patrolling profile
- Archiving should take place

Read more in the Configure General Scheduling & Archiving on page 102 and Configure Camera-specific Scheduling on page 104.

## ***View Video in Management Application***

You can view live video from single cameras directly in the Management Application:

1. In the Management Application's navigation pane, expand *Advanced Configuration*, and expand *Cameras and Storage Information*.
2. Select the required camera to view live video from that camera. Above the live video, you will find a summary of the most important properties for the selected camera. Below the live video, you will find information about the camera's resolution and average image file size. For cameras using MPEG or H.264, you will also see the bit rate in Mbit/second.



**IMPORTANT:** Viewing of live video in the Management Application may under certain circumstances affect any simultaneous recording from the camera in question. Especially three scenarios are important to consider:

- 1) Some cameras supporting multistreaming may halve their frame rate or respond with other negative effects when a second stream is opened.
- 2) If a camera delivers live video in a very high quality, de-coding of images may increase the load on the Recording Server service, which may in turn affect ongoing recordings negatively.
- 3) Cameras that do not support multiple simultaneous video streams will not be able to connect to the surveillance server and the Management Application at the same time; therefore it is recommended to stop the Recording Server service (see page 127) when configuring such devices for motion detection and PTZ.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## Monitor Storage Space Usage

To view how much storage space you have on your XProtect Enterprise system—and not least how much of it is free—do the following:

1. In the Management Application's navigation pane, expand *Advanced Configuration*, and select *Cameras and Storage Information*.
2. View the *Storage Usage Summary* for information about, which drives are available, what drives are used for, the size of each drive, as well as how much video data, other data, and free space there is in each drive.

## Database Resizing

In case recordings for a camera get bigger than expected, or the available drive space is suddenly reduced in another way, an advanced database resizing procedure will automatically take place:

If archives (see page 92) are present on the same drive as the camera's database, the oldest archive for all cameras archived on that drive will be moved to another drive (moving archives is only possible if you use dynamic archiving (see page 65), with which you can archive to several different drives) or—if moving is not possible—deleted.

If no archives are present on the drive containing the camera's database, the size of all camera databases on the drive will be reduced by deleting a percentage of their oldest recordings, thus temporarily limiting the size of all databases

When the Recording Server service (see page 127) is restarted upon such database resizing, the original database sizes will be used. You should therefore make sure that the drive size problem is solved.

Should the database resizing procedure take place, you will be informed on-screen in the Smart Client, in log files, and (if set up) through an e-mail and/or SMS notification.

## Disable or Delete a Camera

All cameras are by default enabled. This means video from the cameras can be transferred to XProtect Enterprise—provided that the cameras are scheduled to be online (see page 105).

To **disable** a camera:

1. In the Management Application's navigation pane, expand *Advanced Configuration*, expand *Cameras and Storage Information*, double-click the camera you want to disable, and clear the *Enabled* box.
2. Save your configuration changes by clicking the *Save Configuration* button in the Management Application's toolbar.

To **delete** a camera, you technically have to delete the hardware device (see page 61). Deleting the hardware device will also delete any attached speakers and microphones. If you do not want this, consider disabling the camera instead.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## Archiving

---

Archiving is an integrated and automated feature that helps you store recordings beyond the capabilities of XProtect Enterprise's standard database. Archiving thus maximizes storage capacity and minimizes risk; you can keep recordings for as long as required, limited only by the available hardware storage capacity.

**Have you used archiving in previous XProtect Enterprise versions?** In that case, note that XProtect Enterprise now automatically archives recordings if a camera's database becomes full. In earlier versions, this was an option configured individually for each camera. Also note that retention time is likely to affect when archiving will take place. Retention time is the *total* amount of time for which you want to keep recordings from a camera (that is recordings in the camera's database *as well as* any archived recordings). In earlier XProtect Enterprise versions, time limits were specified separately for the database and archives; now you only specify one time limit (the retention time). You specify retention time as part of the general Recording & Archiving Paths properties (see page 63). Scheduled archiving is still possible up to 24 times per day.

In the following, archiving is explained in detail. If you would rather begin configuring archiving straight away, see Configure Archiving Locations on page 98 and Configure Archiving Schedules on page 99.

## Benefits of Archiving

With archiving, recordings are moved from their standard location to another location, the archiving location. With archiving, the amount of recordings you are able to store is thus limited only by the available hardware storage capacity:

By default, recordings are stored in XProtect Enterprise's database for each camera. The database for each camera is capable of containing a maximum of 600000 records or 40 GB.

However, the maximum size of a database is not in itself very important: If a database for a camera becomes full, XProtect Enterprise automatically begins archiving its content, freeing up space in the database. Having sufficient archiving space is thus more important (see Storage Capacity Required for Archiving in the following).

In addition to automatic archiving when a database becomes full, you can schedule archiving to take place at particular times up to 24 times per day. This way, you can proactively archive recordings, so databases will never become full.

By using archiving, you will also be able to back up archived records on backup media of your choice, using your preferred backup software.

## How Archiving Works

For each camera, the contents of the camera database will be moved to a default archiving folder, called *Archives*. This will happen automatically if a database becomes full, and one or more times every day, depending on your archiving settings.

The default archiving folder (see page 148) is located on the XProtect Enterprise server, by default in C:\MediaDatabase. In the archiving folder, separate subfolders for storing archives for each



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



camera are automatically created. These subfolders are named after the MAC address of the hardware device to which the camera is connected. Since you can keep archives spanning many days of recordings, and since archiving may take place several times per day, further subfolders, named after the archiving date and time, are also automatically created.

The subfolders will be named according to the following structure:

```
...\Archives\CameraMACAddress_VideoEncoderChannel\DateAndTime
```

Example: With the default archiving folder located under C:\MediaDatabase, video from an archiving taking place at 23.15 on 31st December 2009 for a camera attached to channel 2 on a video encoder hardware device with the MAC address 00408c51e181 would be stored at the following destination:

```
C:\MediaDatabase\Archives\00408c51e181_2\2009-12-31-23-15
```

If the hardware device to which the camera is attached is not a video encoder device with several channels, the video encoder channel indication in the sub-directory named after the hardware device's MAC address will always be `_1` (example: 00408c51e181\_1).

You are of course also able to store archives at other locations than locally in the default archiving directory. You may, for example, specify that your archives should be stored on a network drive.

When archiving to other locations than the default archiving directory, XProtect Enterprise will first temporarily store the archive in the local default archiving directory, then immediately move the archive to the archiving location you have specified.

While this may at first glance seem unnecessary, it greatly speeds up the archiving procedure, and reduces delays in case of network problems. Archiving directly to a network drive would mean that archiving time would vary depending on the available bandwidth on the network. First storing the archive locally, then moving it, ensures that archiving is always performed as fast as possible.

If archiving to a network drive, note the regular camera database can only be stored on a local drive, that is a drive attached directly to the XProtect Enterprise server.

## Dynamic Path Selection for Archives

With dynamic archiving paths, you specify a number of different archiving paths, usually across several drives. Using dynamic paths is highly recommended, and is the default setting when you configure cameras through the Configure Video & Recording Wizard (see page 43).

If the path containing the camera's database is on one of the drives you have selected for dynamic archiving, XProtect Enterprise will always try to archive to that drive first. If not, XProtect Enterprise automatically archives to the archiving drive with the most available space at any time, provided there is not a camera database using that drive. Which drive has the most available space may change during the archiving process, and archiving may therefore happen to several archiving drives during the same process. This fact will have no impact on how users find and view archived recordings.

Dynamic archiving paths are general for all your cameras; you cannot configure dynamic archiving paths for individual cameras.

When deciding which drives to use for dynamic archiving, consider the pros and cons in the following examples (in which we assume that the default archiving path (see page 148) is on drive C:—drive letters are examples only, different drive letters may of course be used in your organization):



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



**Camera records to drive C: and archives to drive C:**

If the path containing the camera's database is on one of the drives you have selected for dynamic archiving, XProtect Enterprise will always try to archive to that drive first. Archiving will take place quickly, but may also fairly quickly fill up the drive with data.

**Camera records to drive C: and archives to drive D:**

Obvious benefit is that recordings and archives are on separate drives. Archiving takes place less quickly. XProtect Enterprise will first temporarily store the archive in the local default archiving directory on C:, then immediately move the archive to the archiving location on D:. Therefore, sufficient space to accommodate the temporary archive is required on C:.

**Camera 1 records to drive C: and archives to drive D:  
while**

**Camera 2 records to drive D: and archives to drive C:**

Avoid. One camera's archiving may take up space required for another camera's recordings. In the above example, Camera 1's archiving to D: may result in no recording space for camera 2 on D:. The rule of thumb is: "Do not cross recording and archiving drives."

If you use several surveillance servers in a master/slave setup (see page 128), each surveillance server must archive to its own mapped location in order for archiving to work. If you attempt to archive to the same mapped location for all the servers, archiving will fail.

## Archiving Audio

If an audio source (microphone or speaker) is enabled on a hardware device, audio recordings will be archived together with video recordings from the camera attached to the hardware device. If the hardware device is a video encoder with several channels, audio will be archived with the camera on channel 1.

When an audio source is enabled, audio is recorded to the associated camera's database. This will affect the database's capacity for storing video. You may therefore want to use scheduled archiving more frequently if recording audio *and* video than if only recording video.

## Viewing Archived Recordings

You view archived recordings with the Smart Client (see page 163) or Viewer (see page 181). You are able to use all of Smart Client's or Viewer's advanced features (video browsing, smart search, export, etc.) for archived recordings as well.

- For archived recordings stored **locally or on network drives** you simply use the Smart Client's or Viewer's playback features, for example the timeline browser, for finding and viewing the required recordings; just like you would with recordings stored in a camera's regular database.
- For **exported** archives, for example archives stored on a CD, you must use the Viewer: Click the browse button in the Viewer's *Database Information* control panel to browse for the archive you want to view. Once you have specified the required archive this way, you can use all of the Viewer's browsing features for navigating the recordings in the archive.



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



In the illustration to the right, the arrow indicates the browse button in the Viewer's *Database Information* control panel.

## Storage Capacity Required for Archiving

The storage capacity required for archiving depends entirely on the amount of recordings you plan to keep, and on how long you want to keep them (a.k.a. retention time).

Some organizations want to keep archived recordings from a large number of cameras for several months or years. Other organizations may only want to archive recordings from one or two cameras, and they may want to keep their archives for much shorter periods of time.

You should always first consider the storage capacity of the **local** drive containing the default archiving directory to which archived recordings are always moved, even though they may immediately after be moved to an archiving location on another drive: As a rule of thumb, the capacity of the local drive should be at least twice the size required for storing the databases of all cameras.

When archiving, XProtect Enterprise automatically checks that space required for the data to be archived plus 1 GB of free disk space per camera is available at the archiving location. If not, the archive location's oldest data from the camera in question will be deleted until there is sufficient free space for the new data to be archived.

In short: When estimating storage capacity required for archiving, consider your organization's needs, then plan for worst case rather than best case scenarios.

**Tip:** Milestone's Storage Calculator, found in the Support section of the Milestone website, [www.milestonesys.com](http://www.milestonesys.com), can help you easily determine the storage capacity required for your surveillance system.

## Backing Up Archives

Many organizations want to back up recordings from cameras, using tape drives or similar. Creating such backups based on the content of camera databases is not recommended; it may cause sharing violations or other malfunctions.

Instead, create such backups based on the content of archives. If you have not specified separate archiving locations for separate cameras, you could simply back up the default local archiving directory, *Archives*.

When scheduling a backup, make sure the backup job does not overlap with any scheduled archiving times.

## Automatic Response if Running Out of Disk Space

With archiving, XProtect Enterprise can automatically respond to the threat of running out of disk space. Two scenarios can occur, depending on whether the camera database drive is different from, or identical to, the archiving drive:

### ***Different Drives: Automatic Archiving if Database Drive Runs Out of Disk Space***

In case the XProtect Enterprise server is running out of disk space, and

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



- the archiving drive is **different from** the camera database drive, and
- archiving has not taken place within the last hour,

archiving will automatically begin in an attempt to free up disk space. This will happen regardless of any archiving schedules.

The server is considered to be running out of disk space if:

- there is less than 10% disk space left, and the available disk space goes below 30 GB plus 1.5 GB per camera
  - or -
- the available disk space goes below 150 MB plus 20 MB per camera (example: with ten cameras, the server would be running out of disk space if the remaining available disk space went below 350 MB (150 MB plus 20 MB for each of the ten cameras))

The difference ensures that very large disks will not necessarily be considered to be running out of disk space just because they have less than 10% disk space left.

On the archiving drive, XProtect Enterprise automatically checks that the space required for data from a camera to be archived plus 1 GB of free disk space per camera is available. If not, the archive drive's oldest data from the camera in question will be deleted until there is sufficient free space for the new data to be archived.

**IMPORTANT:** You will lose the archive data being deleted.

### ***Same Drive: Automatic Moving or Deletion of Archives if Running Out of Disk Space***

In case the XProtect Enterprise server is running out of disk space, and the archiving drive is **identical to** the camera database drive, XProtect Enterprise will automatically do the following in an attempt to free up disk space:

1. First, XProtect Enterprise will attempt to move archives (moving archives is only possible if you use dynamic archiving, with which you can archive to several different drives). This will happen if:
  - there is less than 15% disk space left, and the available disk space goes below 40 GB plus 2 GB per camera
    - or -
  - the available disk space goes below 225 MB plus 30 MB per camera (example: with ten cameras, the server would be running out of disk space if the remaining available disk space went below 525 MB (225 MB plus 30 MB for each of the ten cameras))

The difference ensures that very large disks will not necessarily be considered to be running out of disk space just because they have less than 15% disk space left.

2. If moving archives is not possible, XProtect Enterprise will attempt to delete the oldest archives. This will happen if:
  - there is less than 10% disk space left, and the available disk space goes below 30 GB plus 1.5 GB per camera
    - or -
  - the available disk space goes below 150 MB plus 20 MB per camera (example: with ten cameras, the server would be running out of disk space if the remaining

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



available disk space went below 350 MB (150 MB plus 20 MB for each of the ten cameras))

The difference ensures that very large disks will not necessarily be considered to be running out of disk space just because they have less than 10% disk space left.

**IMPORTANT:** You will lose data from the archives being deleted.

3. Ultimately, if there are no archives to delete, XProtect Enterprise will attempt to resize camera databases by deleting their oldest recordings. This will happen if:
  - there is less than 5% disk space left, and the available disk space goes below 20 GB plus 1 GB per camera
    - or -
  - the available disk space goes below 75 MB plus 10 MB per camera (example: with ten cameras, the server would be running out of disk space if the remaining available disk space went below 175 MB (75 MB plus 10 MB for each of the ten cameras))

The difference ensures that very large disks will not necessarily be considered to be running out of disk space just because they have less than 5% disk space left.

**IMPORTANT:** You will lose the data deleted as part of the database resizing process.

When the recording server is restarted upon such database resizing, the original database sizes will be used. You should therefore make sure the drive size problem is solved, or adjust camera database sizes to reflect the altered drive size.

**Tip:** Should the database resizing procedure take place, you will be informed on-screen in the Smart Client, in log files, and (if set up) through an e-mail and/or SMS notification.

## New Database if Archiving Fails

Under extremely rare circumstances archiving may fail. For example, a database may be full and ready for archiving, but the operating system may lock content in the database if a content file is open. This would prevent archiving. In practice, this situation would only occur if somebody attempted to view a database file (for example a .pic file) directly from the database folder at the time of the archiving (viewing the file directly would actually not work since database content cannot be viewed as individual files, only through the Viewer or a client, such as the Smart Client).

In such situations, the database will be put aside for archiving at a later point in time. While the database is put aside, a special temporary database is created for storage of new recordings. This way, no new recordings will be lost even though the original database is full (provided enough disk space is available for storing the special temporary database).

XProtect Enterprise will wait for the next archiving occasion (either scheduled or because the special temporary database also becomes full). It will then archive the content of the special temporary database, and thus free up space in it. XProtect Enterprise will then continue to store new recordings in the special temporary database. This will apply until the Recording Server service is restarted (see page 127). Once the service has been restarted, the content of the original database will be archived, and new recordings will again be stored in the original database. The special temporary database will also be archived, and will then cease to exist.

**Can I view recordings from the special temporary database?** Normally, the content of databases can be viewed through the Viewer or a client (such as the Smart Client), regardless whether the databases have been archived or not. However, the content of the special temporary

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



database cannot be viewed through a client until the content has been archived. On the surveillance server itself, you will be able to view the content of the special temporary database through the Viewer, even if the special temporary database has not been archived yet. Since the special temporary database will be used for storing new recordings until the Recording Server service is restarted—even though the original database may no longer be locked—you may in these extremely rare situations experience that new recordings are not viewable through clients. In that case, restarting the Recording Server service will help, since it will force the original database to again be used for storing new recordings.

## Virus Scanning and Archiving

If allowed in your organization, disable any virus scanning of camera databases and archiving locations. For more information see page 20.

## Configure Archiving Locations

Before configuring archiving locations, consider whether you want to use static or dynamic archiving paths:

- **Static** archiving paths mean that for a particular camera, archiving will take place to a particular location, and to that location only. Static archiving paths are in principle individual for each camera, but they do not have to be unique: several cameras can easily use the same path if required.

You can configure static archiving paths for individual cameras, or as part of the general Recording & Archiving Paths properties.

- **Individual cameras:** In the Management Application's navigation pane, expand *Advanced Configuration*, expand *Cameras and Storage Information*, double-click the required camera, select *Recording & Archiving Paths*, and specify required properties (see page 78).
- **General Recording & Archiving Paths:** In the Management Application's navigation pane, expand *Advanced Configuration*, double-click *Cameras and Storage Information*, and specify required properties (see page 63).

**Tip:** If several cameras should use the same path, use the general Recording & Archiving Paths properties. There you get a template feature which lets you specify shared archiving locations in just a few clicks.

- **Dynamic** archiving paths allow greater flexibility, and are thus highly recommended. With dynamic archiving paths, you specify a number of different archiving paths, usually across several drives.

If the path containing the camera database to be archived is on one of the drives you have selected for dynamic archiving, XProtect Enterprise will always try to archive to that drive first. If not, XProtect Enterprise automatically archives to the archiving drive with the most available space at any time, provided there is not a camera database using that drive. This fact will have no impact on how users find and view archived recordings.

Dynamic archiving paths are general for all your cameras; you cannot configure dynamic archiving paths for individual cameras.

To configure archiving paths: In the Management Application's navigation pane, expand

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



*Advanced Configuration*, double-click *Cameras and Storage Information*, select *Dynamic Path Selection - Archives*, and specify required properties (see page 65).

If configuring your cameras through the Configure Video & Recording Wizard (see page 43), the wizard also lets you configure archiving paths.

## **Configure Archiving Schedules**

XProtect Enterprise automatically archives recordings if a camera's database becomes full (in earlier versions, this was an option configured individually for each camera).

You are furthermore able to schedule archiving at particular points in time up to 24 times per day, with minimum one hour between each one. This way, you can proactively archive recordings, so databases will never become full. As a rule of thumb, the more you expect to record, the more often you should archive.

There are two ways in which to configure archiving schedules:

- While configuring your cameras through the Configure Video & Recording Wizard (see page 43), in which case you configure your archiving schedule on the wizard's *Drive selection* page.
- As part of the general Scheduling & Archiving Paths properties: In the Management Application's navigation pane, expand *Advanced Configuration*, right-click *Scheduling and Archiving*, select *Properties*, select *Archiving* in the dialog, and specify required properties (see page 104).

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## Audio

---

You add cameras and other hardware devices, such as video encoders, DVRs, etc., to your XProtect Enterprise system through the Add Hardware Devices... wizard (see page 30). If microphones and/or speakers are attached to a hardware device, they are automatically added as well.

When managing microphones and speakers in XProtect Enterprise, it is important to remember the basic concepts:

- **Microphones** are attached to hardware devices, and thus typically physically located next to cameras. They can typically record what people near a camera are saying. Operators, with the necessary rights, can then listen to these recordings through their Smart Clients (provided the computer running the Smart Client has speakers attached).
- **Speakers** are also attached to devices, and thus also typically physically located next to cameras. They can typically transmit information to people near a camera. Operators, with the necessary rights, can talk through such speakers using their Smart Clients (provided the computer running the Smart Client has a microphone attached).

Example: An elevator is stuck. Through a camera mounted in the elevator, Smart Client operators can see that there is an elderly lady in the elevator. A microphone attached to the camera records that the lady says: "I am afraid; please help me out!" Through a speaker attached to the camera, operators can tell the lady that: "Help is on its way; you should be out in less than fifteen minutes."

When managing microphones and speakers in XProtect Enterprise, you thus always manage the microphones and speakers attached to cameras; *not* microphones and speakers attached to Smart Client operators' computers.

## Configure Microphones

Configuration of microphones in XProtect Enterprise is very basic; settings such as volume, etc. are controlled on the microphone units themselves.

1. In the Management Application's navigation pane, expand *Advanced Configuration*, expand *Hardware Devices*, and expand the hardware device to which the required microphone is attached.
2. Right-click the required microphone, and select *Properties*.
3. Specify properties as required:
  - **Enabled:** Microphones are by default enabled, meaning that they are able to transfer audio to XProtect Enterprise. If required, you can disable an individual microphone, in which case no audio will be transferred from the microphone to XProtect Enterprise.
  - **Microphone name:** Name of the microphone as it will appear in the Management Application as well as in clients. If required, you can overwrite the existing microphone name with a new one. Microphone names must be unique, and must not contain any of the following special characters: < > & ' " \ / : \* ? | [ ]



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



On some hardware devices, audio can also be enabled/disabled on the hardware device itself, typically through the hardware device's own configuration web page. If audio on a hardware device does not work after enabling it in the Management Application, you should thus verify whether the problem may be due to audio being disabled on the hardware device itself.

4. Save your configuration changes by clicking the *Save Configuration* button in the Management Application's toolbar.

## Configure Speakers

Configuration of speakers in XProtect Enterprise is very basic; settings such as volume, etc. are controlled on the speaker units themselves.

1. In the Management Application's navigation pane, expand *Advanced Configuration*, expand *Hardware Devices*, and expand the hardware device to which the required speaker is attached.
2. Right-click the required speaker, and select *Properties*.
3. Specify properties as required:
  - **Enabled:** Speakers are by default enabled, meaning that what is transmitted through the speakers is transferred to XProtect Enterprise. If required, you can disable an individual speaker, in which case it will not be possible to say anything through the speaker.
  - **Speaker name:** Name of the speaker as it will appear in the Management Application as well as in clients. If required, you can overwrite the existing speaker name with a new one. Speaker names must be unique, and must not contain any of the following special characters: < > & ' " \ / : \* ? | [ ]

On some hardware devices, audio can also be enabled/disabled on the hardware device itself, typically through the hardware device's own configuration web page. If audio on a hardware device does not work after enabling it in the Management Application, you should thus verify whether the problem may be due to audio being disabled on the hardware device itself.

4. Save your configuration changes by clicking the *Save Configuration* button in the Management Application's toolbar.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## Scheduling

---

In XProtect Enterprise, you can configure scheduling on a general level, which also covers archiving (see page 92), as well as on a camera-specific level.

### ***Configure General Scheduling and Archiving***

XProtect Enterprise's general Scheduling and Archiving feature lets you configure when:

- Cameras should be online (that is transfer video to XProtect Enterprise)
- Cameras should use speedup (that is use a higher than normal frame rate)
- You want to receive any e-mail and/or SMS notifications regarding cameras
- PTZ cameras should patrol, and according to which patrolling profile
- Archiving should take place

Do the following:

1. In the Management Application's navigation pane, expand *Advanced Configuration*, right-click *Scheduling and Archiving*, and select *Properties*.
2. Specify properties as required for Scheduling All Cameras, Scheduling Options, and Archiving. All of the properties are described on the following pages. When ready, click *OK*.
3. Save your configuration changes by clicking the *Save Configuration* button in the Management Application's toolbar.

### **Scheduling All Cameras**

When you configure general scheduling and archiving, you can specify certain properties for many cameras in one go. Either simply in order to speed up things, or because the properties in question are shared by all cameras rather than specific to individual cameras.

All properties on a white background are editable; properties on a light blue background cannot be edited. Note that the properties Online Period, Speedup, E-mail Notification, SMS Notification, and PTZ Patrolling can also be specified individually for each camera.

- **Template:** The template can help you configure similar properties quickly. Say you have 50 cameras and you want to change the online schedule profile for all of them. Instead of having to select the same 50 times, you can simply enter them once in the template, and then apply the template to the 50 cameras with only two clicks.
- **Apply Template:** Lets you select which cameras you want to apply the template for. You then use one of the two *Set* buttons (see descriptions in the following) to actually apply the template.

**Tip:** To select all cameras in the list, click the *Select All* button.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



- **Camera:** Name of each camera as it will appear in the Management Application as well as in clients.
- **Online:** Lets you select the required profile (for example *Always on*) for the online schedule (see page 105) for the camera(s) in question.

**Tip:** If you lack a suitable profile, use the *New schedule profile* feature (described in the following) to configure one. This applies for the other schedule types as well.

- **Speedup:** Lets you select the required profile for the speedup schedule (see page 106) for the camera(s) in question.
- **E-mail:** Lets you select the required profile for the e-mail notification schedule (see page 107) for the camera(s) in question.
- **SMS:** Lets you select the required profile for the SMS (mobile phone text message) notification schedule (see page 108) for the camera(s) in question.
- **PTZ Patrolling:** Only available for PTZ (Pan/Tilt/Zoom) cameras with patrolling, the continuous movement of a PTZ camera between a number of preset positions. Lets you select the required profile for the PTZ patrolling schedule (see page 108) for the camera(s) in question.
- **Select All:** Click button to select all cameras in the *Apply Template* column.
- **Clear All:** Click button to clear all selections in the *Apply Template* column
- **Set selected template value on selected cameras:** Lets you apply only a selected value from the template to selected cameras.
- **New schedule profile:** Lets you create a new schedule profile of any type by clicking the *Create...* button.

## Scheduling Options

- **Start cameras on client requests:** Cameras may be offline, for example because they have reached the end of an online schedule (see page 105), in which case client users will not be able to view live video from the cameras. However, if you select *Start cameras on client requests*, client users will be able to start the camera (technically: force the camera to be online outside its online schedule) in order to view live video from the camera.
- **Schedule profile for new cameras:** Lets you select which online schedule profile to use as default for cameras you subsequently add to your XProtect Enterprise system. Note that your selection only applies for the online schedule, not for any other schedules. Default selection is *Always on*, meaning that new cameras will always be online, that is transferring video to the XProtect Enterprise server for live viewing and further processing.
- **Maximum delay between reconnect attempts:** Lets you control the aggressiveness of reconnection attempts. If XProtect Enterprise loses the connection to a camera, it will by default attempt to re-establish the connection after ten seconds. In some environments, for example if using vehicle-mounted cameras through wireless connections, camera connections may frequently be lost, and you may want to change the aggressiveness of such reconnection attempts.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## Archiving

XProtect Enterprise automatically archives recordings if a camera's database becomes full (in earlier versions, this was an option configured individually for each camera; read more about archiving on page 92).

You are furthermore able to schedule archiving at particular points in time every day. This way, you can proactively archive recordings, so databases will never become full. As a rule of thumb, the more you expect to record, the more often you should archive.

### Archiving Time

The *Archiving Times* list shows the times at which you want to automatically archive the content of all camera databases on your XProtect Enterprise server. You can do this up to 24 times per day, with minimum one hour between each one.

To add archiving times to the list:

1. Specify required time in the time box to the right of the *Archiving Times* list. You specify the required time by selecting the hour, minute and second values respectively, then clicking the *up* and *down* buttons to increase or decrease values. Alternatively, you can simply overwrite selected hour, minute or second values.
2. Click the *Add* button.

### Archive Failure Notification

You can automatically get notified if archiving fails:

- **Send e-mail on archiving failure:** If selected, XProtect Enterprise will automatically send an e-mail to selected recipients if archiving fails. This requires that the e-mail notification feature (see page 110) is enabled. Recipients are defined as part of the e-mail notification properties.
- **Send SMS on archiving failure:** If selected, XProtect Enterprise will automatically send an SMS (mobile phone text message) to selected recipients if archiving fails. This requires that the SMS notification feature (see page 112) is enabled. Recipients are defined as part of the SMS notification properties.

E-mail and SMS notifications are normally only sent during scheduled periods (see page 107). However, archiving failures are considered to be so serious that, if enabled, e-mail and SMS notifications regarding archiving failures are sent regardless of schedules.

## Configure Camera-specific Scheduling

With camera-specific scheduling, you can configure when:

- A camera should be online (that is transfer video to XProtect Enterprise)
- A camera should use speedup (that is use a higher than normal frame rate)
- You want to receive any e-mail and/or SMS notifications regarding the camera
- If the camera is a PTZ camera able to patrol: when it should patrol, and according to which patrolling profile

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



Do the following:

1. In the Management Application's navigation pane, expand *Advanced Configuration*, expand *Scheduling and Archiving*, right-click the required camera, and select *Properties*.
2. Specify properties as required for Online Period, Speedup, E-mail Notification, SMS Notification, and (if dealing with a PTZ camera capable of patrolling) PTZ Patrolling. All of the properties are described on the following pages. When ready, click OK.
3. Save your configuration changes by clicking the *Save Configuration* button in the Management Application's toolbar.

## Online Period

When you configure scheduling for specific cameras, your *Online Period* settings are probably the most important, since they determine when each camera should transfer video to XProtect Enterprise.

By default, cameras added to XProtect Enterprise will automatically be online, and you will only need to modify the online period settings if you require cameras to be online only at specific times or events. Note, however, that this default may be changed as part of the general scheduling options (see page 103), in which case subsequently added cameras will not automatically be online. The fact that a camera transfers video to XProtect Enterprise does not necessarily mean that video from the camera is recorded. Recording is configured separately; see page 63.



You specify a camera's online periods by creating schedule profiles based on:

- Periods of time (example: Mondays from 08.30 until 17.45), shown in pink:
- Events (see page 114) within periods of time (example: from Event A occurs until Event B occurs Mondays from 08.30 until 17.45), shown in yellow:

The two options can be combined , but they cannot overlap in time.

XProtect Enterprise comes with two simple schedule profiles, **Always on** and **Always off**, which cannot be edited or deleted. If these do not meet your needs, you can create any number of customized schedule profiles for each camera. When you create a customized schedule profile for one camera, you can reuse it with other cameras if required. To create a customized schedule profile:

1. In the field below the **Schedule profiles** list, specify a name for the new schedule profile. Schedule profile names must not contain any of the following special characters: < > & ' " \ / : \* ? | [ ]
2. Click the **Add New** button (which becomes available when you specify a name).
3. In the top right corner of the dialog, select **Set camera to start/stop on time** (to base subsequent settings on periods of time) or **Set camera to start/stop on event** (to base subsequent settings on events within periods of time).

**Tip:** You can combine the two, so you may return to this step in order to toggle between the two options.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



4. In the calendar section, place your mouse pointer at a required start point, then hold down the left mouse button, drag the mouse pointer and release at the required end point.

- You specify each day separately.
- You specify time in increments of five minutes; XProtect Enterprise helps you by showing the time over which your mouse pointer is positioned.
- If you base your schedule profile—or parts of it—on events within periods of time, remember to select **Start event** and **Stop event** from the lists below the calendar section.



**Tip:** If you have not yet defined any suitable events, you can quickly do it: Use the *Configure events* list, located below the other fields.

- To delete an unwanted part of a schedule profile, right-click it and select *Delete*.
- To quickly fill or clear an entire day, double-click the name of the day.
- As an alternative to dragging inside the calendar section, use the **Start time**, **End time** and **Day** fields, then the **Change Period** or **Set Period** button as required. When using the *Start time* and *End time* fields, remember that time is specified in increments of five minutes. You cannot specify a period shorter than five minutes, and you can only use times like 12:00, 12:05, 12:10, 12:15, etc. If you specify a time outside of the five-minute intervals, such as 12:13, you will get an error message.

## Speedup

When you configure scheduling for specific MJPEG cameras, you can specify speedup periods. Before you can define this type of schedule, speedup must be enabled (see page 68). You specify a camera's speedup periods by creating schedule profiles based on periods of time (example: Mondays from 08.30 until 17.45), shown in olive green:



Speedup may also take place based on events, but that is configured elsewhere: See *Frame Rate - MJPEG (General Recording & Storage Properties)* on page 64 and *Frame Rate (Camera-specific Properties)* on page 75.

XProtect Enterprise comes with two simple schedule profiles, **Always on** and **Always off**, which cannot be edited or deleted. If these do not meet your needs, you can create any number of customized schedule profiles for each camera. When you create a customized schedule profile for one camera, you can reuse it with other cameras if required. To create a customized schedule profile:

1. In the field below the **Schedule profiles** list, specify a name for the new schedule profile. Schedule profile names not contain any of the following special characters: < > & ' " \ / : \* ? | [ ]
2. Click the **Add New** button (which becomes available when you specify a name).
3. In the calendar section, place your mouse pointer at a required start point, then hold down the left mouse button, drag the mouse pointer and release at the required end point.
  - You specify each day separately.



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.

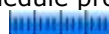


- You specify time in increments of five minutes; XProtect Enterprise helps you by showing the time over which your mouse pointer is positioned.
- To delete an unwanted part of a schedule profile, right-click it and select *Delete*.
- To quickly fill or clear an entire day, double-click the name of the day.
- As an alternative to dragging inside the calendar section, use the **Start time**, **End time** and **Day** fields, then the **Change Period** or **Set Period** button as required. When using the *Start time* and *End time* fields, remember that time is specified in increments of five minutes. You cannot specify a period shorter than five minutes, and you can only use times like 12:00, 12:05, 12:10, 12:15, etc. If you specify a time outside of the five-minute intervals, such as 12:13, you will get an error message.



## E-mail Notification

When you configure scheduling for specific cameras, you can specify e-mail notification periods. Before you can define this type of schedule, e-mail notification must be enabled (see page 110). You specify a camera's e-mail notification periods by creating schedule profiles based on periods of time (example: Mondays from 08.30 until 17.45), shown in blue:



XProtect Enterprise comes with two simple schedule profiles, **Always on** and **Always off**, which cannot be edited or deleted. If these do not meet your needs, you can create any number of customized schedule profiles for each camera. When you create a customized schedule profile for one camera, you can reuse it with other cameras if required. To create a customized schedule profile:

1. In the field below the **Schedule profiles** list, specify a name for the new schedule profile. Schedule profile names not contain any of the following special characters: < > & ' " \ / : \* ? | [ ]
2. Click the **Add New** button (which becomes available when you specify a name).
3. In the calendar section, place your mouse pointer at a required start point, then hold down the left mouse button, drag the mouse pointer and release at the required end point.
  - You specify each day separately.
  - You specify time in increments of five minutes; XProtect Enterprise helps you by showing the time over which your mouse pointer is positioned.
  - To delete an unwanted part of a schedule profile, right-click it and select *Delete*.
  - To quickly fill or clear an entire day, double-click the name of the day.
  - As an alternative to dragging inside the calendar section, use the **Start time**, **End time** and **Day** fields, then the **Change Period** or **Set Period** button as required. When using the *Start time* and *End time* fields, remember that time is specified in increments of five minutes. You cannot specify a period shorter than five minutes, and you can only use times like 12:00, 12:05, 12:10, 12:15, etc. If you specify a time outside of the five-minute intervals, such as 12:13, you will get an error message.





This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## SMS Notification

When you configure scheduling for specific cameras, you can specify SMS (mobile phone text message) notification periods. Before you can define this type of schedule, SMS notification must be enabled (see page 112). You specify a camera's SMS notification periods by creating schedule profiles based on periods of time (example: Mondays from 08.30 until 17.45), shown in green:



XProtect Enterprise comes with two simple schedule profiles, **Always on** and **Always off**, which cannot be edited or deleted. If these do not meet your needs, you can create any number of customized schedule profiles for each camera. When you create a customized schedule profile for one camera, you can reuse it with other cameras if required. To create a customized schedule profile:

1. In the field below the **Schedule profiles** list, specify a name for the new schedule profile. Schedule profile names not contain any of the following special characters: < > & ' " \ / : \* ? | [ ]
2. Click the **Add New** button (which becomes available when you specify a name).
3. In the calendar section, place your mouse pointer at a required start point, then hold down the left mouse button, drag the mouse pointer and release at the required end point.
  - You specify each day separately.
  - You specify time in increments of five minutes; XProtect Enterprise helps you by showing the time over which your mouse pointer is positioned.
  - To delete an unwanted part of a schedule profile, right-click it and select *Delete*.
  - To quickly fill or clear an entire day, double-click the name of the day.
  - As an alternative to dragging inside the calendar section, use the **Start time**, **End time** and **Day** fields, then the **Change Period** or **Set Period** button as required. When using the *Start time* and *End time* fields, remember that time is specified in increments of five minutes. You cannot specify a period shorter than five minutes, and you can only use times like 12:00, 12:05, 12:10, 12:15, etc. If you specify a time outside of the five-minute intervals, such as 12:13, you will get an error message.



## PTZ Patrolling

When you configure scheduling for PTZ (Pan/Tilt/Zoom) cameras capable of patrolling (see page 86), you can specify which patrolling profiles to use at specific times. Before you can define this type of schedule, patrolling must be configured for the cameras in question.

Patrolling schedule profiles are based on use of particular patrolling profiles within particular periods of time (example: Mondays from 08.30 until 17.45), shown in red:




Use of one patrolling profile may be followed immediately by use of another (example: use the Daytime patrolling profile Mondays from 08.30 until 17.45, then the Evening patrolling profile Mondays from 17.45 until 23.00). Use of two patrolling profiles cannot overlap.

Unlike other types of scheduling, there are no ready-made *Always on* and *Always off* schedule profiles for PTZ patrolling. You can create any number of customized schedule profiles for each

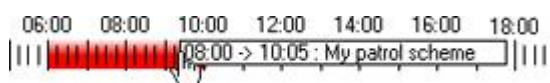
This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



camera. When you create a customized schedule profile for one camera, you can reuse it with other cameras if required. To create a customized schedule profile:

1. In the field below the **Schedule profiles** list, specify a name for the new schedule profile. Schedule profile names not contain any of the following special characters: < > & ' " \ / : \* ? | [ ]
2. Click the **Add New** button (which becomes available when you specify a name).
3. In the *Patrolling profile* list below the calendar section, select the required patrolling profile.
4. In the calendar section, place your mouse pointer at a required start point, then hold down the left mouse button, drag the mouse pointer and release at the required end point.
  - You specify each day separately.
  - You specify time in increments of five minutes; XProtect Enterprise helps you by showing the time over which your mouse pointer is positioned. 
  - To delete an unwanted part of a schedule profile, right-click it and select *Delete*.
  - To quickly fill or clear an entire day, double-click the name of the day.
  - As an alternative to dragging inside the calendar section, use the **Start time**, **End time** and **Day** fields, then the **Change Period** or **Set Period** button as required. When using the *Start time* and *End time* fields, remember that time is specified in increments of five minutes. You cannot specify a period shorter than five minutes, and you can only use times like 12:00, 12:05, 12:10, 12:15, etc. If you specify a time outside of the five-minute intervals, such as 12:13, you will get an error message.
5. Repeat steps 3-4 if you want to use several patrolling profiles within the same schedule profile.

If use of one patrolling profile is followed immediately by use of another, run your mouse pointer over the red bar to see which patrolling profile applies when.



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## E-mail and SMS (Mobile Text)

---

### Configure E-mail Notifications

With e-mail notifications, you and your colleagues can instantly get notified when your surveillance system requires attention. XProtect Enterprise can automatically send e-mail notifications to one or more recipients when:

- Motion (see page 81) is detected
- Events (see page 114) occur (you can select individually for each event whether you want to receive an e-mail notification or not, thus avoiding irrelevant e-mails)
- Archiving (see page 92) fails (if e-mail notification has been selected as part of the scheduling properties for archiving, see page 104)

Do the following:

1. In the Management Application's Navigation pane, expand *Advanced Configuration*, right-click *E-mail* and select *Properties*.
2. You enable the use of e-mail alerts separately for the Recording Server service and—if applicable—the Viewer.
  - **Enable e-Mail (Recording Server):** Enables e-mail notifications whenever the Recording Server service (see page 133) is running. E-mail notifications will then be sent when the following conditions apply:
    - the Recording Server service is running
    - motion is detected or an event, for which the sending of an e-mail notification has been defined, occurs
    - motion is detected within a period of time for which an e-mail notification schedule has been defined
  - **Enable e-Mail (Viewer):** Enables e-mail notifications in the Viewer (see page 181). In effect, this will display the *E-Mail Report* button in the Viewer's toolbar, enabling users to send evidence via e-mail. Use of the e-mail feature is only possible when the Viewer is run on the surveillance system server itself; not in a Viewer exported with video evidence. If e-mail alerts are enabled for the Viewer, the content you specify in the *Recipient(s)*, *Subject text* and *Message text* fields will appear as default values in the Viewer's dialog for sending evidence via e-mail. Viewer users will be able to overwrite these default values.
3. Specify required properties, including the important information about which SMTP mail server to use. The properties are described on the following pages. When ready, click *OK*.

**Tip:** You can test your e-mail notification configuration by clicking the *Test* button; this will send a test e-mail to the specified recipients.
4. Save your configuration changes by clicking the *Save Configuration* button in the Management Application's toolbar.

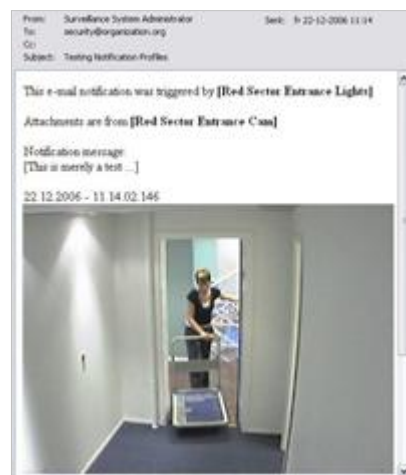
When configuring e-mail alerts, also consider the e-mail notification schedules (see page 107) configured for each camera.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## E-mail Properties

- **Recipient(s):** Lets you specify the e-mail addresses to which e-mail notifications should be sent. If specifying more than one e-mail address, separate the e-mail addresses with semicolons (example: aa@aa.aa;bb@bb.bb;cc@cc.cc).
- **Test:** Sends a test e-mail to the specified recipients. If *Include Image* is selected, the test e-mail will have a still test JPEG image attached.
- **Subject text:** Specify required subject text for e-mail notifications.
- **Message text:** Specify required message text for e-mail notifications. Note that camera information as well as date and time information is automatically included in e-mail notifications.
- **Include Image:** Select check box to include still images in e-mail notifications. When selected, a still JPEG image from the time the triggering event occurred will be attached to each e-mail notification.
- **Do not send e-mail on camera failures:** If selected, e-mail notifications will not be sent if XProtect Enterprise loses contact with a camera. Otherwise, automatic e-mail notifications will be sent in such cases, regardless of any scheduled e-mail notification periods (see page 107).
- **Time between motion- and database-related e-mails per camera:** Minimum time (in minutes) to pass between the sending of each e-mail notification per camera. This interval only applies for e-mail notification generated by detected motion or database-related events; e-mail notification generated by other types of events will still be sent out whenever the events occur. Examples: If specifying 5, a minimum of five minutes will pass between the sending of each motion- or database-related e-mail notification per camera, even if motion or database events are detected in between. If specifying 0, e-mail notifications will be sent each time motion or database events are detected, potentially resulting in a very large number of e-mail notifications being sent. If using the value 0, you should therefore consider cameras' motion detection sensitivity settings (see page 81).
- **Sender e-mail address:** Type the e-mail address you wish to appear as the sender of the e-mail notification.
- **Outgoing mail (SMTP) server name:** Type the name of the SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol) server which will be used for sending the e-mail notifications. Compared with other mail transfer methods, SMTP has the advantage that you will avoid automatically triggered warnings from your e-mail client. Such warnings may otherwise inform you that your e-mail client is trying to automatically send e-mail messages on your behalf.



Example: e-mail including a still image

TLS (Transport Layer Security) and its predecessor SSL (Secure Socket Layer) is not supported; if the sender belongs on a server that requires TLS or SSL, e-mail notifications will not work properly. Also, you may be required to disable any e-mail scanners that could prevent the application sending the e-mail notifications.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



- **Server requires login:** Select check box if a user name and password is required to use the SMTP server.
- **Username:** Only required when *Server requires login* is selected. Specify the user name required for using the SMTP server.
- **Password:** Only required when *Server requires login* is selected. Specify the password required for using the SMTP server.

## Configure SMS Notifications

With SMS (mobile phone text message) notifications, you—or a colleague—can instantly get notified when your surveillance system requires attention. XProtect Enterprise can automatically send SMS notifications to one or more recipients when:

- Motion (see page 81) is detected
- Events (see page 114) occur; you can select individually for each event whether you want to receive an e-mail notification or not, thus avoiding irrelevant SMS messages
- Archiving (see page 92) fails, provided SMS notification has been selected as part of the archiving properties (see page 104))

Use of the SMS notification feature requires that an external Siemens TC-35 GSM modem has been attached to a serial port (a.k.a. COM port) on the XProtect Enterprise server. Siemens TC-35 is a dual-band EGSM900/GSM1800 modem; verify that the modem is compatible with mobile phone networks where you are going to use it with XProtect Enterprise.

To configure SMS notifications, do the following:

1. In the Management Application's Navigation pane, expand *Advanced Configuration*, right-click *SMS* and select *Properties*.
2. Enable the use of SMS by selecting the *Enable SMS* check box.
3. Specify required properties. The properties are described on the following pages.

**Tip:** You can test your SMS notification configuration by clicking the *Test* button; this will send a test SMS to the specified recipient. Note that you must stop the Recording Server service (see page 127) while you perform the test (remember to start the service again afterwards).

When ready, click *OK*.

4. Save your configuration changes by clicking the *Save Configuration* button in the Management Application's toolbar.

When configuring SMS alerts, also consider the SMS notification schedules (see page 108) configured for each camera.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## SMS Properties

- **GSM modem connected to:** Select port connecting the XProtect Enterprise server to the GSM modem.
- **SIM card PIN code:** Specify PIN code for the SIM card inserted in the GSM modem.
- **SIM card PUK code:** Specify PUK code (that is unlocking code) for the SIM card inserted in the GSM modem.
- **SMS central phone number:** Specify the number of the SMS central to which the GSM modem should connect in order to send SMS notifications.
- **Recipient phone number:** Specify the number of the mobile telephone to which SMS alerts should be sent. It is only possible to send SMS notifications to a single telephone number.
- **Message:** Specify required message text for the SMS notification. Message text must be no longer than 160 characters, and must only contain the following characters: a-z, A-Z, 0-9 as well as commas (,) and full stops (.). Note that camera information as well as date and time information is automatically included in SMS notifications.

**Tip:** While you write, the counter below the *Message* fields indicates how many characters you have left to use.

- **Time between motion- and database-related SMSs per camera:** Minimum time (in minutes) to pass between the sending of each SMS notification per camera. This interval only applies for SMS notification generated by detected motion or database-related events; SMS notification generated by other types of events will still be sent out whenever the events occur. Examples: If specifying 5, a minimum of five minutes will pass between the sending of each motion- or database-related SMS notification per camera, even if motion or database events are detected in between. If specifying 0, SMS notifications will be sent each time motion or database events are detected, potentially resulting in a very large number of SMS notifications being sent. If using the value 0, you should therefore consider cameras' motion detection sensitivity settings (see page 81).
- **Test:** Lets you test your SMS notification configuration by sending a test SMS to the specified recipient. Note that you must stop the Recording Server service (see page 127) while you perform the test (remember to start the service again afterwards).
- **Do not send SMS on camera failures:** If selected, SMS notifications will not be sent if XProtect Enterprise loses contact with a camera. Otherwise, automatic SMS notifications will be sent in such cases, regardless of any scheduled SMS notification periods (see page 108).



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## Events, Input and Output

---

**Hardware input**, such as door sensors, etc. can be attached to input ports on hardware devices. Input from such external hardware input units can be used for generating events in XProtect Enterprise.

**Events** of various types (see the following for details) can be used for automatically triggering actions in XProtect Enterprise. Examples of actions: starting or stopping recording on cameras, switching to a particular video frame rate, triggering e-mail or SMS notifications, making PTZ cameras move to specific preset positions, etc. Events can also be used for activating hardware output.

**Hardware output** units can be attached to output ports on many hardware devices, allowing you to activate lights, sirens, etc. from XProtect Enterprise. Such hardware output can be activated automatically by events, or manually from clients.

The following types of events exist:

- **Hardware input events:** Events based on input from hardware input units attached to hardware devices are called hardware input events.

Some hardware devices have their own capabilities for detecting motion, for detecting moving and/or static objects, etc. (configured in the hardware devices' own software; typically by accessing a browser-based configuration interface on the hardware device's IP address). When this is the case, XProtect Enterprise considers such detections as input from the hardware, and you can use such detections as input events as well.

Lastly, hardware input events can be based on XProtect Enterprise detecting motion in video from a camera, based on motion detection settings (see page 81). This type of hardware input events is also called system motion detection events or VMD (Video Motion Detection) events. In earlier XProtect Enterprise versions, VMD events were an event type of their own; now they are simply considered a type of hardware input event.

- **Manual events:** Events may be generated manually by users selecting them in their clients. These events are called manual events.
- **Generic events:** Input may also be received in the form of TCP or UDP data packages, which can be analyzed by XProtect Enterprise, and—if matching specified criteria—used to generate events. Such events are called generic events.
- **Timer events:** Timer events are separate events, triggered by the hardware input event or manual event or generic event under which they are defined. Timer events occur a specified number of seconds or minutes after the event under which they are defined has occurred. Timer events may be used for a wide variety of purposes, typically for stopping previously triggered actions. Examples:
  - A camera starts recording based on a hardware input event, for example when a door is opened; a timer event stops the recording after 15 seconds
  - Lights are switched on and a camera starts recording based on a manual event; a timer event stops the recording after one minute, and another timer event switches the lights off after two minutes

**VMD events; where are they?** In previous versions of XProtect Enterprise, an event type called VMD events existed. VMD (Video Motion Detection) events were based on the XProtect Enterprise



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



system detecting motion in the video stream from a camera. This is still possible, but now you configure such events as hardware input events.

You do not have to configure hardware input units separately; any hardware input units connected to hardware devices are automatically detected when you add the hardware devices to XProtect Enterprise. The same goes for hardware output, but hardware output does require some simple configuration in XProtect Enterprise.

Before configuring events of any type, **configure general event handling**, such as which ports XProtect Enterprise should use for event data. Normally, you can just use the default values, but it is a good idea to verify that your organization is not already using the ports for other purposes. See Configure General Event Handling in the following.

When you are ready to **configure events**, see Add a Hardware Input Event on page 116, Add a Manual Event on page 117 and Add a Generic Event on page 119. If you want to use timer events with your other events, see Add a Timer Event on page 123.

If you want to **configure hardware output** and **automatically trigger output when events occur**, so that, for example, lights are switched on when a door is opened or when motion is detected in video, see Add a Hardware Output on page 124 and Configure Hardware Output on Event on page 125.

## Configure General Event Handling

Before configuring events of any type, configure general event handling, such as which ports XProtect Enterprise should use for event data. Normally, you can just use the default values, but it is a good idea to verify that your organization is not already using the ports for other purposes.

1. In the Management Application's navigation pane, expand *Advanced Configuration*, right-click *Events and Output*, and select *Properties*.
2. Specify required properties:
  - **Alert and generic event port:** Lets you specify port number to use for handling events, including generic events (see page 119). Default port is port 1234.
  - **SMTP event port:** Lets you specify port number to use for sending event information from hardware devices to XProtect Enterprise via SMTP. Default port is port 25.
  - **FTP event port:** Lets you specify port number to use for sending event information from hardware devices to XProtect Enterprise via FTP. Default port is port 21.
  - **Polling interval [1/10] second:** For a small number of hardware devices, primarily dedicated input/output devices (see page 61), it is necessary for XProtect Enterprise to regularly check the state of the hardware devices' input ports in order to detect input. Such state checking at regular intervals is called polling. You can specify (in tenths of a second) the interval between state checks. Default value is 10 tenths of a second (that is one second). For dedicated input/output devices, it is highly recommended that the polling frequency is set to the lowest possible value (one tenth of a second between state checks). For information about which hardware devices require polling, see the release note.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



When ready, click *OK*.

3. Save your configuration changes by clicking the *Save Configuration* button in the Management Application's toolbar.

## Add a Hardware Input Event

With hardware input events, you can turn input received from input units attached to hardware devices into events in XProtect Enterprise.

Before you specify input for a hardware device, verify that sensor operation is recognized by the hardware device. Most hardware devices are capable of showing this in their configuration interfaces, or via CGI script commands. Also check the release notes to verify that input-controlled operation is supported for the hardware device and firmware used.

To add and/or configure a hardware input event, do the following:

1. In the Management Application's navigation pane, expand *Advanced Configuration*, then expand *Events and Output*. Right-click *Hardware Input Events* and select *Enable New Input Event*.
2. In the *Hardware Input Event Properties* window's list of hardware devices, expand the required hardware device to see a list of pre-defined hardware input.
3. Select the required types of input to use them as events. The types of input often vary from camera to camera. If motion detection (see page 81) is enabled for the camera in question, note the input type *System Motion Detection*, which lets you turn detected motion in the camera's video stream into an event. In earlier XProtect Enterprise versions, this was known as a VMD event.

Note that some types of input are mutually exclusive. When you select one type of input, you may therefore note that other types of input become unavailable for selection.

4. For each selected type of input, select required properties. All of the properties are described in the following.
5. When ready, click *OK*, or click the *Add button* to add a timer event (see page 123) to the event you have just created.
6. Save your configuration changes by clicking the *Save Configuration* button in the Management Application's toolbar.

## Hardware Input Properties

Note that some properties depend on the selected type of input.

- **Enable:** Select check box to use selected type of input as an event in XProtect Enterprise, and specify further properties.
- **Event name:** Specify a name for the event. Hardware input event names must be unique, and must not contain the following characters: < > & ' " \ / : \* ? | [ ]

Some cameras only support event names of a certain length and/or with a certain structure. Refer to the camera's documentation for exact details.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



- **Images from camera:** Only relevant if using pre- and post-alarm images, a feature available for selected cameras only; it enables sending of images from immediately before an event took place from the camera to the surveillance system via e-mail. Pre- and post-alarm images should not be confused with XProtect Enterprise's own pre- and post-recording feature (see page 77). Lets you select which camera you want to receive pre- and/or post-alarm images from.
- **Number of pre-alarm images:** Only relevant if using pre-alarm images, a feature available for selected cameras only. Specify required number of pre-alarm images. Allowed number may differ from camera to camera; allowed range is displayed to the right of the field.
- **Frames per second:** Only relevant if using pre-alarm images, a feature available for selected cameras only. Specify required frame rate. Used in combination with the *Number of pre-alarm images* field, this field indirectly allows you to control how long before the event you want to receive pre-alarm images from.
- **Send e-mail if this event occurs:** Only available if e-mail notification (see page 110) is enabled. Select if XProtect Enterprise should automatically send an e-mail when the event occurs. Recipients are defined as part of the e-mail notification configuration. When using e-mail notifications, also bear in mind individual cameras' scheduling (see page 107).
- **Attach image from camera:** Only available if e-mail notification (see page 110) is enabled. Select to include an image—recorded at the time the event is triggered—in the e-mail notification, then select the required camera in the list next to the check box.
- **Send SMS if this event occurs:** Only available if SMS (mobile phone text message) notification (see page 112) is enabled. Select if XProtect Enterprise should automatically send an SMS when the event occurs. Recipients are defined as part of the SMS notification configuration. When using SMS notifications, also bear in mind individual cameras' scheduling (see page 108).
- **Delete:** Lets you delete a selected timer event.
- **Add:** When a specific hardware input event is selected, clicking *Add* will add a timer event (see page 123) to the selected hardware input event.

## Add a Manual Event

With manual events, your users with required rights (see page 136) can trigger events manually from their clients (see page 163). Manual events can be global (shared by all cameras) or tied to a particular camera (only available when the camera is selected). You can use manual events for a wide variety of purposes, for example:

- As start and stop events for use when scheduling cameras' online periods (see page 105). For example, you can make a camera start or stop transferring video to the surveillance system based on a manual event.
- As start and stop events for controlling other camera settings. For example, you can make a camera use a higher frame rate based on a manual event or you can use a manual event for triggering PTZ on event (see page 89).

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



- For triggering output. Particular output can be associated with manual events (see page 125).
- For triggering event-based e-mail and/or SMS notifications.
- In combinations. For example, a manual event could make a camera start transferring video to the surveillance system while an output is triggered and an e-mail notification is sent to relevant people.

To add a manual event, do the following:

1. In the Management Application's navigation pane, expand *Advanced Configuration*, then expand *Events and Output*. Right-click *Manual Events* and select *Add New Manual Event*
2. In the list in the left side of the *Manual Event Properties*, select global or a camera as required.
3. Click the *add* button and specify required properties (described in the following). When ready, click *OK*, or click the *Add* button again to add a timer event (see page 123) to the event you have just created.
4. Save your configuration changes by clicking the *Save Configuration* button in the Management Application's toolbar.

## Manual Event Properties

- **[List of defined global events and cameras]:** Contains a *Global* node and a list of all defined cameras. You can configure as many manual events as required, no matter whether they are global or camera-specific. A + sign next to the *Global* node indicates that one or more global manual events have already been configured. A + sign next to a camera indicates that one or more manual events have already been configured for that camera.
- **Event name:** Specify a name for the event; this is the name that client users will see. Manual event names must be unique, and must not contain the following characters: < > & ' " \ / : \* ? | [ ]

Some cameras only support event names of a certain length and/or with a certain structure. Refer to the camera's documentation for exact details.

- **Send e-mail if this event occurs:** Only available if e-mail notification (see page 110) is enabled. Select if XProtect Enterprise should automatically send an e-mail when the event occurs. Recipients are defined as part of the e-mail notification configuration. When using e-mail notifications, also bear in mind individual cameras' scheduling (see page 107).
- **Attach image from camera:** Only available if e-mail notification is enabled. Select to include an image—recorded at the time the event is triggered—in the e-mail notification, then select the required camera in the list next to the check box.
- **Send SMS if this event occurs:** Only available if SMS (mobile phone text message) notification (see page 112) is enabled. Select if XProtect Enterprise should automatically send an SMS when the event occurs. Recipients are defined as part of the SMS notification configuration. When using SMS notifications, also bear in mind individual cameras' scheduling (see page 108).

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



- **Delete:** Lets you delete a selected event.
- **Add:** Lets you add a new event. When *Global* or a specific camera is selected, clicking *Add* will add a new manual event. When a specific manual event is selected, clicking *Add* will add a timer event (see page 123) to the selected manual event.

## Add a Generic Event

XProtect Enterprise is able to analyze received TCP and/or UDP data packages, and automatically trigger events when specified criteria are met. This way you can easily integrate your XProtect Enterprise surveillance system with a very wide range of external sources, for example access control systems, alarm systems, etc. Events based on the analysis of received TCP and/or UDP packets are called generic events.

1. In the Management Application's navigation pane, expand *Advanced Configuration*, then expand *Events and Output*. Right-click *Generic Events* and select *Add New Generic Event*
2. In the *Generic Event Properties* window, click the *Add* button, and specify required properties (described in the following). When ready, click *OK*, or click the *Add button* to add a timer event (see page 123) to the event you have just created.
3. Save your configuration changes by clicking the *Save Configuration* button in the Management Application's toolbar.

## Generic Event Properties

- **Event name:** Specify a name for the event. Generic event names must be unique, and must not contain the following characters: < > & ' " \ / : \* ? | [ ]
- **Event port:** Read-only field displaying the port number on which XProtect Enterprise listens for generic events (default is port 1234). The port number can be changed as part of the general event handling configuration (see page 115).
- **Event substring:** Lets you specify the individual items for which XProtect Enterprise should look out for when analyzing data packages. Specify one or more terms, then click the **Add** button to add the specified term(s) to the *Event message expression* field, the content of which will be used for the actual analysis. Examples:
  - Single term: User001 (when added to the *Event message expression* field, the term will appear as "User001")
  - Several terms as one item: User001 Door053 Sunday (when added to the *Event message expression* field, the terms will appear as "User001 Door053 Sunday")

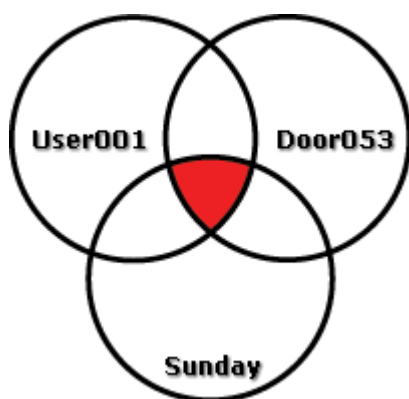
When you add several terms as one item (appearing as, for example, "User001 Door053 Sunday" in the *Event message expression* field), everything between the quotation marks must appear together in the package, in the specified sequence, in order to match your criterion. If the terms must appear in the package, but not necessarily in any exact sequence, add the terms one by one (that is so they will appear as "User001" "Door053" "Sunday" in the *Event message expression* field).

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



**Tip:** It is OK for TCP and UDP packages used for generic events to contain special characters, such as @, #, +, å, ~, etc. within the text string to be analyzed.

- **Event message expression:** Displays the string which will be used for the actual package analysis. The field is not directly editable. However, you can position the cursor inside the field in order to determine where a new item should be included when you click the *Add* button or one of the parenthesis or operator buttons described in the following. Likewise, you can position the cursor inside the field in order to determine where an item should be removed when clicking the *Remove* button: The item immediately to the left of the cursor will be removed when you click the *Remove* button.
  - **(:** Lets you add a start parenthesis character to the *Event message expression* field. Parentheses can be used to ensure that related terms are processed together as a logical unit; in other words, they can be used to force a certain processing order in the analysis. Example: If using ("User001" OR "Door053") AND "Sunday", the two terms inside the parenthesis will be processed first, then the result will be combined with the last part of the string. In other words, XProtect Enterprise will first look for any packages containing either of the terms *User001* or *Door053*, then it will take the results and run through them in order to see which packages also contain the term *Sunday*.
  - **)**: Lets you add an end parenthesis character to the *Event message expression* field.
  - **AND:** Lets you add an AND operator to the *Event message expression* field. With an AND operator, you specify that the terms on both sides of the AND operator must be present. Example: If using *User001 AND Door053 AND Sunday*, the term *User001* as well as the term *Door053* as well as the term *Sunday* must be present in order for the criterion to be met. It is not enough for only one or two of the terms to be present. As a rule of thumb, the more terms you combine with AND, the *fewer* results you will retrieve:

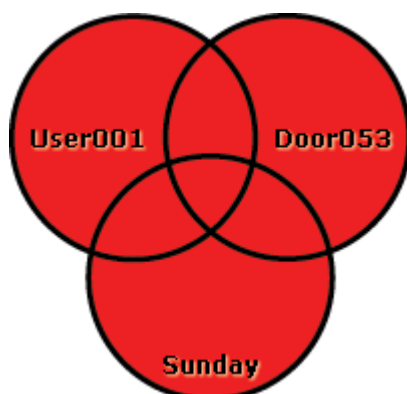


Combinations with AND yields few results (indicated in red)

- **OR:** Lets you add an OR operator to the *Event message expression* field. With an OR operator, you specify that either one or another term must be present. Example: If using *User001 OR Door053 OR Sunday*, the term *User001* or the term *Door053* or the term *Sunday* must be present in order for the criterion to be met. The criterion is satisfied even if only one of the terms is present. As a rule of thumb, the more terms you combine with OR, the *more* results you will retrieve:



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



Combinations with OR yields many results  
(indicated in red)

- **Remove:** Lets you remove the item immediately to the left of a cursor positioned in the *Event message expression* field. If you have not positioned the cursor in the *Event message expression* field, the last item in the field will be removed.
- **Event priority:** The same data package may be analyzed for different events. The ability to assign a priority to each event lets you manage which event should be triggered if a received package matches the criteria for several events. The priority must be specified as a number between 0 (lowest priority) and 1000 (highest priority). When XProtect Enterprise receives a TCP and/or UDP package, analysis of the packet will start with analysis for the event with the highest priority. This way, when a package matches the criteria for several events, only the event with the highest priority will be triggered. If a package matches the criteria for several events with an identical priority, for example two events with a priority of 999, all events with the priority in question will be triggered.
- **Event protocol:** Lets you select which protocol XProtect Enterprise should listen for in order to detect the event:
  - **Any:** Listen for, and analyze, packages using TCP as well as UDP protocol.
  - **TCP:** Listen for, and analyze, packages using TCP protocol only.
  - **UDP:** Listen for, and analyze, packages using UDP protocol only.
- **Event rule type:** Lets you select how particular XProtect Enterprise should be when analyzing received data packages:
  - **Search:** In order for the event to occur, the received package must contain the message specified in the *Event message expression* field, but may also have more content. Example: If you have specified that the received package should contain the terms "User001" and "Door053", the event will be triggered if the received package contains the terms "User001" and "Door053" and "Sunday" since your two required terms are contained in the received package.
  - **Match:** In order for the event to occur, the received package must contain *exactly* the message specified in the *Event message expression* field, and nothing else.
- **Send e-mail if this event occurs:** Only available if e-mail notification (see page 110) is enabled. Select if XProtect Enterprise should automatically send an e-mail when the event occurs. Recipients are defined as part of the e-mail notification configuration. When using e-mail notifications, also bear in mind individual cameras' scheduling (see page 107).



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



- **Attach image from camera:** Only available if e-mail notification is enabled. Select to include an image—recorded at the time the event is triggered—in the e-mail notification, then select the required camera in the list next to the check box.
- **Send SMS if this event occurs:** Only available if SMS (mobile phone text message) notification (see page 112) is enabled. Select if XProtect Enterprise should automatically send an SMS when the event occurs. Recipients are defined as part of the SMS notification configuration. When using SMS notifications, also bear in mind individual cameras' scheduling (see page 108).
- **Delete:** Lets you delete a selected event.
- **Add:** Lets you add a new event. When the *Generic Events* node is selected, clicking *Add* will add a new generic event. When a specific generic event is selected, clicking *Add* will add a timer event (see page 123) to the selected generic event.

## Test a Generic Event

Once you have added a generic event, a quick and easy way to test your generic event is to first set up an event notification and then use Telnet to send a small amount of data which will trigger the generic event and in turn the event notification.

**What is Telnet?** Telnet is a terminal emulation program used on TCP/IP networks. With Telnet, you can connect to a server from a computer on the network, and execute commands through Telnet as if you were entering them directly on the server. Windows includes a client for use with Telnet.

For this example, we have created a generic event called *Video*. Our generic event simply specifies that if the term *video* appears in a received TCP data package, the generic event should be triggered. Your generic event may be different, but you can still use the principles outlined in the following:

1. In the Management Application navigation pane, expand *Advanced Configuration*, then expand *Cameras and Storage Information*, right-click a camera to which you have access in the Smart Client, and select *Properties*.
2. Select *Event Notification*, select the required generic event, and click *OK*.

Make sure that your generic event is the *only* event appearing in the *Selected Events* list while you are performing the test, otherwise you cannot be sure that it is your generic event which triggers the event notification. Once you are done testing, you can move any temporarily removed events back to the *Selected Events* list.

3. Save your configuration changes by clicking the *Save Configuration* button in the Management Application's toolbar.
4. Make sure XProtect Enterprise's Recording Server service is running. Also make sure that the camera for which you just configured the event notification is displayed in your Smart Client, and that you have camera title bars enabled in your Smart Client so that you can see the yellow event indicator.
5. In Windows' *Start* menu, select *Run...*, and type the following in the *Open* field:
  - **If you are performing the test on the XProtect Enterprise server itself:**  
`telnet localhost 1234`

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



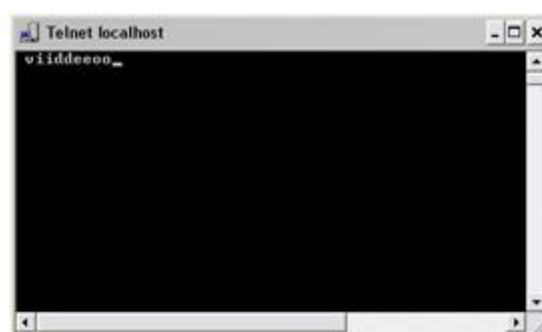
- **If you are performing the test from a remote computer:** Substitute *localhost* with the IP address of the XProtect Enterprise server. Example: If the IP address of the XProtect Enterprise server is 123.123.123.123, type: `telnet 123.123.123.123 1234`


This will open a *Telnet* window.

In the above examples, the number 1234 indicates the port on which the XProtect Enterprise server listens for generic events. Port 1234 is the default port for this purpose, but it is possible to change this by specifying another port number as part of the general event handling configuration (see page 115). If the alert and generic event port number has been changed on your system, type your system's alert and generic event port number instead of 1234.

7. In the *Telnet* window, type the terms (so-called *event substring*) required to trigger your generic event. In our case, a single term, *video*, is required.

While typing in the Telnet window, you may experience so-called echo. This is simply the server repeating some or all of the characters it receives; it will not have any impact as long as you are sure you type the required characters.



8. Close the *Telnet* window by clicking the close button in its top right corner: . It is important that you close the window; your input is not sent to the surveillance system until you close the window.
9. Go to your Smart Client. If the yellow event indicator lights up for the required camera, your generic event works as intended:



## Add a Timer Event

Timer events are separate events, triggered by the hardware input event (see page 116), manual event (see page 117) or generic event (see page 119) under which they are defined. Timer events

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



occur a specified number of seconds or minutes after the event under which they are defined has occurred. Timer events may be used for a wide variety of purposes, typically for stopping previously triggered actions. Examples:

- A camera starts recording based on a hardware input event, for example when a door is opened; a timer event stops the recording after 15 seconds
- Lights are switched on and a camera starts recording based on a manual event; a timer event stops the recording after one minute, and another timer event switches the lights off after two minutes

To add a timer event, select any event you have previously configured, click the *Add* button, and specify required properties (described in the following). When ready, click *OK*, and save your configuration changes by clicking the *Save Configuration* button in the Management Application's toolbar.

**Tip:** You can add as many timer events as required under an event. This way, you can, for example, make one timer event trigger something 10 seconds after the main event, another timer event trigger something else 30 seconds after the main event, and a third timer event trigger something else 2 minutes after the main event.

## Timer Event Properties

- **Timer event name:** Specify a name for the event. Timer event names must be unique, and must not contain the following characters: < > & ' " \ / : \* ? | [ ]

Some cameras only support event names of a certain length and/or with a certain structure. Refer to the camera's documentation for exact details.

- **Timer event occurs after:** Lets you specify the amount of time that should pass between the main event occurring and the timer event (in seconds or minutes).

## Add a Hardware Output

With hardware output, you can add external output units, such as lights, sirens, door openers, etc., to your XProtect Enterprise system. Once added, output can be activated automatically by events (see page 114) or detected motion, or manually by users of clients (see page 163).

Before you specify output, verify that sensor operation is recognized by the hardware device with which you are going to use the output. Most hardware devices are capable of showing this in their configuration interfaces, or via CGI script commands. Also check the release notes to verify that output-controlled operation is supported for the hardware device and firmware used.

To add a hardware output event, do the following:

1. In the Management Application's navigation pane, expand *Advanced Configuration*, then expand *Events and Output*. Right-click *Hardware Output* and select *Add New Output*.
2. In the *Hardware Output Properties* window's list of hardware devices, select the required hardware device, and click the *Add* button below the list.
3. Specify required properties (described in the following).

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



4. Click *OK*.
5. Save your configuration changes by clicking the *Save Configuration* button in the Management Application's toolbar.

For information about how to configure automatic activation of hardware output when events occur, see [Configure Hardware Output on Event](#) (see page 125).

You configure output for manual activation in clients as well as for automatic activation on detected motion individually for each camera (see page 80).

## Hardware Output Properties

- **Output name:** Specify a name for the event. If you are going to make the hardware output available for manual activation in clients, this is the name that client users will see. Hardware output names must be unique, and must not contain the following characters: < > & ' " \ / : \* ? | [ ]

Some hardware devices only support hardware output names of a certain length and/or with a certain structure. Refer to the hardware device's documentation for exact details.

- **Output connected to:** Lets you select which of the hardware device's output ports the output is connected to. Many hardware devices only have a single output port; in that case simply select *Output 1*.
- **Keep output for:** Lets you specify the amount of time for which the output should be applied. Specify the required amount of time in either 1/10 seconds or seconds.

Some hardware devices are only able to apply output for a relatively short time, for example for up to five seconds. Refer to the documentation for the hardware device in question for exact information.

**Tip:** To verify that your hardware output works, click the *Test Output* button.

## Configure Hardware Output on Event

Once you have added hardware output (see page 124), such as lights, sirens, door openers, etc., you can associate the hardware output with events (see page 114). This way, particular hardware output can be activated automatically when events occur. Example: When a door is opened (hardware input event), lights are switched on (hardware output).

When making the associations, you can select between **all** output and events defined on your XProtect Enterprise server; you are not limited to selecting output or events defined on particular hardware devices.

1. In the Management Application's navigation pane, expand *Advanced Configuration*, then expand *Events and Output*. Right-click *Output Control on Event* and select *Properties*.
2. In the *Event* column, select the required event.
3. In the *Output* column, select the hardware output you want to be activated by the event.
4. Click *OK*.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



5. Save your configuration changes by clicking the *Save Configuration* button in the Management Application's toolbar.

You can use a single event for activating more than one output.

You cannot delete associations, but you can change your selections or select *None* in both columns as required.

**Tip:** If you have not yet defined any suitable event or output, you can quickly do it: Use the *Configure events* list and/or *Configure Output...* button, located below the list of associations.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## Services

---

The following services are all automatically installed on the XProtect Enterprise server:

- **Milestone Recording Server service:** A vital part of the surveillance system; video streams are only transferred to XProtect Enterprise while the Recording Server service is running.
- **Milestone Image Server service:** Provides access to the surveillance system for users logging in with a Remote Client or a Smart Client. If the PDA Server front end is installed, the Image Server service also handles access for PDA Client users. Read more about the clients on page 163.
- **Milestone Image Import service:** Used for fetching pre- and post-alarm images, and storing the fetched images in camera databases. Pre- and post-alarm images is a feature available for selected cameras only; it enables sending of images from immediately before an event took place from the camera to the surveillance system via e-mail. Pre- and post-alarm images should not be confused with XProtect Enterprise's own pre- and post-recording feature (see page 77).
- **Milestone Log Check service:** Performs integrity checks on XProtect Enterprise log files. For more information about logging, see page 139.

The services by default run transparently in the background on the XProtect Enterprise server.

## Start and Stop Services

On an XProtect Enterprise server, four services by default run in the background. If required, you can start and stop each service separately:

1. In the Management Application's Navigation pane, expand *Advanced Configuration* and select *Services*. This will display the status of each service.
2. You can now stop each service by clicking the *Stop* button. When a service is stopped, the button changes to *Start*, allowing you to start the service again when required.

**Tip:** Occasionally, you may want to stop a service and start it again immediately after. The *Restart* button allows you to do just that with a single click.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## Master and Slave Servers

---

You can create a master/slave setup of XProtect Enterprise servers. A master/slave setup will allow remote users to transparently connect to more than one server simultaneously: When remote users connect to the master server, they will instantly get access to the slave servers as well.

If you do not wish to use a master/slave setup—for example because there is only a single XProtect Enterprise server on your system—simply do not specify anything in the *Master/Slave Setup* section.

### Configure a Master/Slave Setup

1. In the Management Application's Navigation pane, expand *Advanced Configuration*, right-click *Master/Slave* and select *Properties*.
2. Select the *Enable as master server* check box.
3. Click *Add* to add a slave server.
4. Specify slave server properties (see next page). When ready, click *OK*.
5. Save your configuration changes by clicking the *Save Configuration* button in the Management Application's toolbar.

### Add a Slave Server

To add a slave server, expand *Advanced Configuration* in the Management Application, right-click *Master/Slave* and select *Add New Slave Server*, then specify slave server properties (see next page).

Slave servers can also be added from the *Master/Slave Properties* window by clicking *Add*.

**Tip:** Instead of specifying a host name when adding a slave server, you may specify the IP address of the slave server. Simply type the IP address in the *Address* field when adding the slave server. Remember that if on a local network, the *local* IP address of the slave server must be used.

Before you start using your master/slave setup, remember to verify that:

- Required users have been defined on the master server as well as on each of the slave servers.
- Public Access (see page 130) has been enabled on all involved servers, and ports mapped accordingly in the routers or firewalls used, if the slave servers are to be accessed from the internet.

When using a master/slave setup, remote users and their rights must be defined in the Management Application's *Users* section on the master server as well as on each of the slave servers. Only cameras to which a remote user has been given access will be visible to the user, regardless of whether the cameras are connected to the master server or to one of the slave servers. If they are to be accessed from the internet, *Public Access* must be enabled on all involved servers, and ports must be mapped accordingly in the routers and/or firewalls used.



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## Master and Slave Properties

### Master Server

- **Enable as master server:** Select to enable as master server.
- **Add:** Lets you add slave servers.

### Slave Servers

- **Address:** IP address of the slave server.
- **Port:** Port number of the slave server.
- **Delete:** Lets you remove a slave server from the list of slave servers. Select the slave server in the list and click the *Delete* button.

When selecting *Master Server*, the *Delete* button is disabled and the *Add* button is enabled—provided that *Enable as master server* is selected—allowing you to add slave servers to the master server. When selecting a slave, the *Add* button is disabled and the *Delete* button is enabled—allowing you to remove a slave server.

**How many master servers can I use in a master/slave setup?** An unlimited number of servers per SLC (Software License Code, specified during installation) can be designated as master servers. If required—for example if your organization is very large and spread over many geographical locations or in case you want to create a redundancy solution—this allows you to use several master servers in a master/slave setup.

**How many slave servers can I use in a master/slave setup?** An unlimited number of servers can be defined as slave servers under a designated master server using the same Software License Code.

**How do I switch around which server is master and which server is slave?** If you want a slave server to become a master server, simply clear *Enable as master server* on the original master server and click *OK*. In the Management Application's navigation pane right-click the slave server that you want to become the master server, and select *Properties*. Then select *Enable as master server*. Next click *Add* to add slave servers to the new master server.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## Client Access to Surveillance System

You can configure clients' access the XProtect Enterprise server in two ways: Through a wizard or through Advanced Configuration.

### Wizard-driven Configuration

Guided configuration through a wizard lets you quickly specify how clients access the server as well as which users should be able to use clients. See Configure User Access Wizard on page 51.

When using the wizard, all users you add will have access to all cameras, including any new cameras added at a later stage. If this is not acceptable, specify access settings, users and user rights separately; see the following.

### Advanced Configuration

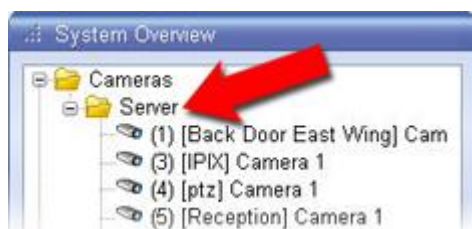
In previous versions of XProtect Enterprise, this was known as Image Server administration, since technically it is the Image Server service (see page 127) which handles clients' access to the surveillance system.

1. In the Management Application's navigation pane, expand *Advanced Configuration*, right-click *Server Access* and select *Properties*.
2. Specify required properties for Server Access, Local IP Ranges, and Language Support & XML Encoding. The properties are described on the following pages. When ready, click *OK*.
3. Save your configuration changes by clicking the *Save Configuration* button in the Management Application's toolbar.

When using this option, you configure client users separately from clients' access; see Add Basic Users on page 133, Add Windows Users on page 134, Add User Groups on page 135, and Configure User & Group Rights on page 136.

### Server Access

- **Server name:** Name of the XProtect Enterprise server as it will appear in clients. Client users with rights to configure their clients will see the name of the server when they create views in their clients.



Example: In this case, the name *Server* was used

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



- **Local port:** Port number to use for communication between clients and the surveillance server. The default port number is 80; you can change the port number if port 80 is used for other purposes in your organization.
- **Enable internet access:** Select the check box if the server should be accessible from the internet through a router or firewall. If selecting this option, also specify the public ("outside") IP address and port number in the following fields. When using public access, the router or firewall used must be configured so requests sent to the public IP address and port are forwarded to the local ("inside") IP address and port of the XProtect Enterprise server.
- **Internet address:** Lets you specify a public IP address or hostname for use when the XProtect Enterprise server should be available from the internet.
- **Internet port:** Lets you specify a port number for use when the XProtect Enterprise should be available from the internet. The default port number is 80; you can change the port number if port 80 is used for other purposes in your organization.
- **Max. number of clients:** You can limit the number of clients allowed to connect at the same time. Depending on your XProtect Enterprise configuration and the performance of the hardware and network used, limiting the number of simultaneously connected clients may help reduce server load. If more than the allowed number of simultaneously connected clients attempt to log in, only the allowed number of clients will be allowed access. Any clients in excess of the allowed number will receive an error message when attempting to log in. By default, a maximum of ten simultaneously connected clients are allowed. To specify a different maximum number, simply overwrite the value.

**Tip:** To allow an unlimited number of simultaneously connected access clients, type 0 (zero) in the *Max. number of clients* field.

A four-minute session timeout period applies for client sessions on XProtect Enterprise. In many cases, client users may not notice this at all. However, the session timeout period will be very evident if you set the *Max. number of clients* value to 1. When that is the case, and the single allowed client user logs out, four minutes must pass before it will be possible to log in again.

## Local IP Ranges

You can specify IP address ranges which XProtect Enterprise should recognize as coming from a local network. This can be relevant if different subnets are used across your local network.

1. Click the *Add* button.
2. In the *Start Address* column, specify the first IP address in the required range.
3. In the *End Address* column, specify the last IP address in the required range.

**Tip:** If required, an IP address range may include only one IP address (example: 192.168.10.1-192.168.10.1).

4. Repeat if other local IP address ranges are required.

## Language Support & XML

You can select the language/character set used by the XProtect Enterprise server and clients.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



- **Language:** Select required language/character set. Example: If the surveillance server runs a Japanese version of Windows, select *Japanese*. Provided access clients also use a Japanese version of Windows, this will ensure that the correct language and character encoding is used in clients' communication with the server. If using a master/slave setup (see page 128), remember to specify the same language/character set on all involved servers.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.





## Users


---


To get an overview of your XProtect Enterprise system's users, expand *Advanced Configuration* in the Management Application's navigation pane, then expand *Users*.

The term *users* primarily refers to users who are able to connect to the surveillance system through their clients (see page 163). You can configure such users in two ways:

- As  **basic users**, authenticated by a user name/password combination.
- As  **Windows users**, authenticated based on their Windows login

You can add both types of users through the Configure User Access wizard (see page 51) or individually (see Add Basic Users in the following and Add Windows Users on page 134).

By grouping users, you can specify rights (see page 136) for all users within a  **group** in one go. If you have many users performing similar tasks, this can save you significant amounts of work. User groups are logical groups created and used for practical purposes in the Management Application only. They are not in any way connected with user groups from central directory services such as, for example, Active Directory®. If you want to use groups, make sure you add groups (see page 135) before you add users: You cannot add existing users to groups.

Finally, the  **administrator** is also listed under *Users*. If required, this lets you configure password protection for the Management Application (see page 28).

## Wizard-driven Configuration

The Configure User Access Wizard (see page 51) helps you quickly configure clients' access to the XProtect Enterprise server as well as which users should be able to use clients.

When using the wizard, all users you add will have access all to cameras, including any new cameras added at a later stage. If this is not acceptable, specify access settings, users and user rights separately. Also note that you cannot add users to groups through the wizard.

## Advanced Configuration

### Add Basic Users

When adding a basic user, you create a dedicated surveillance system user account with basic user name and password authentication for the individual user. Note that adding the user as a Windows user (see page 134) will provide better security.

If you want to include users in groups, make sure you add required groups (see page 135) before you add users: You cannot add existing users to groups.

1. In the Management Application's navigation pane, expand *Advanced Configuration*, right-click *Users*, and select *Add New Basic User*.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



2. Specify a user name. User names must be unique, and must not contain the following characters: < > & ' " \ / : \* ? | [ ]

Then specify a password, and repeat it to be sure you have specified it correctly.

3. Click *OK*.
4. Specify General Access and Camera Access properties (see page 136). These properties will determine the rights of the user.
5. Click *OK*.
6. Save your configuration changes by clicking the *Save Configuration* button in the Management Application's toolbar.

## Add Windows Users

When adding Windows users, you import users defined locally on the server, or users from Active Directory®, and authenticate them based on their Windows login. This generally provides better security than the basic user concept, and is the recommended method. Note, however, that this method does not work for PDA Client users (see page 168).

If you want to include users in groups, make sure you add required groups (see page 135) before you add users: You cannot add existing users to groups.

**Are there any prerequisites for adding users from a local database?** The users must have been defined as local PC users on the server. Simple file sharing must be disabled on the server. To disable simple file sharing, right-click Windows' *Start* button and select *Explore*. In the window that opens, select the *Tools* menu, then select *Folder Options...*, then the *View* tab. Scroll to the bottom of the tab's *Advanced Settings* list, and make sure that the *Use simple file sharing (Recommended)* check box is cleared. When ready, click *OK* and close the window.

**What is Active Directory?** Active Directory is a distributed directory service included with several Windows Server operating systems; users are specified centrally in Active Directory. In short, the benefits of importing user data from Active Directory are that administrators do not have to create separate user accounts for accessing the surveillance system because user authentication will be handled centrally by Active Directory, and that users can use their Windows login when accessing the surveillance system; no need to memorize separate user names and passwords.

**Are there any prerequisites for adding users from Active Directory?** XProtect Enterprise verifies client users' identities using NTLM challenge handshake with a Microsoft Domain Controller. In order to be able to import users and groups through Active Directory, a server with Active Directory installed and acting as domain controller must be available on your network. Consult your network administrator if in doubt.

**Can I add groups from Active Directory?** You can only add individual users from Active Directory to XProtect Enterprise. Active Directory also supports groups of users, but you cannot add such groups to XProtect Enterprise. You can, however, group individual users in XProtect Enterprise, and quickly assign common user rights for all users within such groups.

1. In the Management Application's navigation pane, expand *Advanced Configuration*, right-click *Users*, and select *Add New Windows User*. This will open the *Select Users or Groups* window.



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



By default, you will be able to make selections from your entire directory. If you want to narrow this, click the *Select Users and Groups* window's *Locations...* button, and select the location you require.

2. In the *Enter the object names to select* box, type the required user names, then use the *Check Names* feature to verify that the user names you have entered are recognized.  
Example: *Brian; Hannah; Karen; Wayne*
3. When ready, click *OK*.
4. Specify General Access and Camera Access properties (see the following pages). These properties will determine the rights of the user.
5. Click *OK*
6. Save your configuration changes by clicking the *Save Configuration* button in the Management Application's toolbar.

When a user who has been added from a **local database** logs in with a client, the user should not specify any server name, PC name, or IP address as part of the user name. Example of a correctly specified user name: USER001. Example of an incorrectly specified user name: PC001/USER001. The user should of course still specify a password and any required server information.

## Add User Groups

User groups are logical groups created and used for practical purposes in the Management Application only. They are not in any way connected with user groups from central directory services such as, for example, Active Directory®.

By grouping users, you can specify rights for all users within a group in one go. If you have many users performing similar tasks, this can save you significant amounts of work.

Make sure you add groups before you add users: You cannot add existing users to groups.

1. In the Management Application's navigation pane, expand *Advanced Configuration*, right-click *Users*, and select *Add New User Group*.
2. Specify a name for the group. Group names must be unique, and must not contain the following characters: < > & ' " \ / : \* ? | [ ]
3. Click *OK*.
4. Specify General Access and Camera Access properties (see the following pages). These properties will determine the rights of the group's future members.
5. Click *OK*
6. Save your configuration changes by clicking the *Save Configuration* button in the Management Application's toolbar.
7. Now you can add users to the group: In the navigation pane, right-click the group you just created, and add Basic Users (see page 133) or Windows Users (see page 134) as required.



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## Configure User and Group Rights

User/group rights are configured during the process of adding users/groups, see Add Basic Users, Add Windows Users and Add User Groups in the previous.

Note that you can also add basic and Windows users through the Configure User Access wizard (see page 51). However, when using the wizard all users you add will have access all to cameras, including any new cameras added at a later stage.

If you at a later stage want to edit the rights of a user or group:

1. In the Management Application's navigation pane, expand *Advanced Configuration*, expand *Users*, right-click the required user or group, and select *Properties*.
2. Edit General Access and Camera Access properties (see the following). These properties will determine the rights of the user/group.
3. Click *OK*
4. Save your configuration changes by clicking the *Save Configuration* button in the Management Application's toolbar.

## User and Group Properties

### User Information

- **User name:** Only editable if the selected user is of the type basic user. Lets you edit the user name. User names must be unique, and must not contain the following characters: < > & ' " \ / : \* ? | [ ]
- **Password:** Only editable if the selected user is of the type basic user. Lets you edit the password. Remember to repeat the password to be sure you have specified it correctly.
- **User type:** Non-editable field, displaying whether the selected user is of the type basic user or Windows user.

### Group Properties

- **Group name:** Lets you edit the group name. Group names must be unique, and must not contain the following characters: < > & ' " \ / : \* ? | [ ]

### General Access

When adding or editing basic users, Windows users or groups, specify general access settings:

- **Live:** Ability to access the *Live* tab in the Smart Client and Remote Client.
- **Playback:** Ability to access the *Playback* tab in the Smart Client and Remote Client.
- **Setup:** Ability to access the *Setup* tab in the Smart Client and Remote Client.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



- **Edit shared views:** Ability to create and edit views in shared groups in the Smart Client and Remote Client. Views placed in shared groups can be accessed by every user. If a user/group does not have this right, shared groups will be protected, indicated by a padlock icon in the Smart Client and Remote Client.

Views created in a Smart Client can only be shared with other Smart Client users. Views created in a Remote Client can only be shared with other Remote Client users. It is not possible to share views across the two types of client.

- **Edit private views:** Ability to create and edit views in private groups in the Smart Client and Remote Client. Views placed in private groups can only be accessed by the user who created them. If a user/group does not have this right, private groups will be protected, indicated by a padlock icon in the Smart Client and Remote Client. Denying users the right to create their own views may make sense in some cases; for example in order to limit bandwidth use.

For more information about shared and private views, see the separate Smart Client and Remote Client documentation

**Tip:** By clearing the *Live*, *Playback* and *Setup* check boxes you can effectively disable the user's/group's ability to use the Smart Client and Remote Client. You can use this as a temporary alternative to deleting the user/group, for example while the user is on vacation.

## Camera Access

When adding or editing basic users, Windows users or groups, specify camera access settings:

In the list of cameras, use the *Access* column to select which cameras the user/groups should have access to. Note the last item in the list, *Rights for new cameras when added to the system*, with which you can allow the user/group access to any future cameras.

Then, for each camera, use the *Camera* column to select the camera, and then specify which features the user/group should have access to when working with the selected camera.

Access	Camera
<input type="checkbox"/>	Camera1
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Camera2
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Camera3

Example: The user/group should have access to cameras 2 and 3. Camera 2 (note the darker background) is selected for specification of features.

**Tip:** If the same features should be accessible for several cameras, you can select multiple cameras by pressing SHIFT or CTRL on your keyboard while selecting.

The features are listed in two columns in the lower part of the window: the left column lists features related to live viewing, the right column lists features related to playback:

In the *Live* column, the following features, all selected by default, are available:

- **Live:** Ability to view live video from the selected camera(s).
  - **PTZ:** Ability to use navigation features for PTZ (Pan/Tilt/Zoom) cameras. A user/group will only be able to use this right if having access to one or more PTZ cameras.
  - **PTZ Preset Positions:** Ability to use navigation features for moving a PTZ camera to particular preset positions. A user/group will only be able to use this right if having access to one or more PTZ cameras with defined preset positions.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



- **Output:** Ability to activate output (lights, sirens, door openers, etc.) related to the selected camera(s).
- **Events:** Ability to use manually trigger events related to the selected camera(s). This feature is available in the Smart Client only.
- **Incoming audio:** Ability to listen to incoming audio from microphones related to the selected camera(s). This feature is available in the Smart Client only.
- **Outgoing audio:** Ability to talk to audiences through speakers related to the selected camera(s). This feature is available in the Smart Client only.
- **Manual recording:** Ability to manually start recording for a fixed time (defined by the surveillance system administrator (see page 68)).

In the *Playback* column, the following features, all selected by default, are available:

- **Playback:** Ability to play back recorded video from the selected camera.
  - **AVI/JPEG Export:** Ability to export evidence as movie clips in the AVI format and as still images in the JPEG format.
  - **Database Export:** Ability to export evidence in database format. This feature is available in the Smart Client only.
  - **Sequences:** Ability to use the *Sequences* feature when playing back video from the selected camera.
  - **Smart Search:** Ability to use the smart search feature, with which users can search for motion in one or more selected areas of images from the selected camera. This feature is available in the Smart Client only.
  - **Audio:** Ability to listen to recorded audio from microphones related to the selected camera(s).

**Why can I not select certain features?** Typically because the selected camera does not support the features. For example, you can only select PTZ-related features if the camera is a PTZ camera. Also, some of the features depend on the user's/group's General Access properties (see page 136): For example, in order to have access to PTZ or output features, the user/group must have access to viewing live video; in order to use AVI/JPEG export, the user/group must have access to playing back recorded video.

**Why are some feature check boxes filled with squares?** Square-filled check boxes can appear in the lower part of the window if you have selected several cameras and a feature applies for some but not all of the cameras. Example: For camera A you have selected that use of the *Events* is allowed; for camera B it is not allowed. If you select both camera A and camera B in the list, the *Events* check box in the lower part of the window will be square-filled. Another example: Camera C is a PTZ camera for which you have allowed the *PTZ preset positions* feature; camera D is not a PTZ camera. If you select both camera C and camera D in the list, the *PTZ preset positions* check box will be square-filled.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## Logging

---

XProtect Enterprise is able to generate various logs:

- **Management Application log files.** These files log activity in the Management Application. A new log file is created for each day the Management Application is used. You cannot disable this type of logging. Management Application log files are named according to the structure AdminYYYYMMDD.log, for example Admin20091231.log.
- **Recording Server service log files.** These files log Recording Server service activity (see page 127). A new log file is created for each day the service is used. You cannot disable this type of logging. Recording Server service log files are named according to the structure RecordingServerYYYYMMDD.log, for example RecordingServer20091231.log.
- **Image Server service log files.** These files log activity on the Image Server service (see page 127). A new log file is created for each day the service is used. You cannot disable this type of logging. Image Server service log files are named according to the structure ISLog\_YYYYMMDD.log, for example ISLog\_20091231.log.
- **Image Import service log files.** These files log activity regarding the Image Import service, when this service is used for fetching pre-alarm images, and storing the fetched images in camera databases. Pre-alarm images is a feature available for selected cameras only; it enables sending of images from immediately before an event took place from the camera to the surveillance system via e-mail. A new log file is created for each day the service is used. You cannot disable this type of logging. Image Import service log files are named according to the structure ImageImportLog\_YYMMDD.log, for example ImageImportLog20091231.log.
- **Event log files.** These files log information about registered events (see page 114). A new log file is created for each day on which events occur. You cannot disable this type of logging. Event log files should be viewed using the Smart Client (use the *Playback* tab's *Alerts* section) or the Viewer (use the *Alarm Overview* control panel).
- **Audit log files:** These files log Remote Client and Smart Client user activity provided audit logging is enabled. A new log file is created for each day with audit logging enabled and client user activity. Audit log files are named according to the structure is\_auditYYYYMMDD.log, for example is\_audit20091231.log. The *\_is* prefix is due to the fact that the audit log files are generated by the Image Server service.
- **Viewer export log files:** These files log activity regarding database export from the Viewer (not from the Smart Client). A new log file is created for each day on which export is performed from the Viewer. Exported databases as well as the export log files are by default placed in an *Exported Images* folder on the desktop of the computer on which the export was performed. Note that the export location may be changed as part of the export process. Viewer export log files are named according to the structure ExportYYYYMMDD.log, for example Export20091231.log. Note that database exports may be encrypted and/or compressed, in which case Viewer export log files are also encrypted/compressed and further file extensions, such as *.mzi* or *.men*, may appear in Viewer export log file names.

All log files are by default placed in the appropriate *All Users* folder for the operating system used, for example C:\ProgramData\Milestone if running Windows Vista. By default, they are stored there for seven days. Note, however, that log file locations as well as the number of days to store the logs can be changed as part of the logging configuration.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



Most log files generated by XProtect Enterprise use a shared structure complying with the W3C Extended Log File Format. Each log file consists of a header and a number of log lines:

- The header outlines the information contained in the log lines.
- The log lines consist of two main parts: the log information itself as well as an encrypted part. The encrypted part makes it possible—through decryption and comparison—to assert that a log file has not been tampered with.

## ***Configure System, Event, and Audit Logging***

1. In the Management Application's Navigation pane, expand *Advanced Configuration*, right-click *Logs* and select *Properties*.
2. Specify required properties (see the following) for:
  - General system logs (Management Application log, Recording Server service log, Image Server service log, Image Import service log)
  - The event log
  - The audit log

Note that only audit logging can be disabled/enabled by administrators; all other logs are compulsory. When ready, click *OK*.

3. Save your configuration changes by clicking the *Save Configuration* button in the Management Application's toolbar.

## **Log Properties**

When you configure logging, you can define the following properties:

**Logs** (that is Management Application log, Recording Server service log, Image Server service log, Image Import service log)

- **Path:** These system log files are by default placed in the appropriate *All Users* folder for the operating system used, for example C:\ProgramData\Milestone if running Windows Vista. To specify another location for your log files, type the path to the required folder in the *Path* field, or click the browse button next to the field to browse to the required folder.
- **Days to log:** A new log file is created each day the Management Application and/or the services are used. A log file older than the number of days specified in the field is automatically deleted. By default, the log file will be stored for seven days. To specify another number of days (max. 9999), simply overwrite the value in the field. The current day's activity is always logged, even with a value of 0 in the field. Therefore, if you specify 0, you will log current day's activity; if you specify 1, you will keep one day plus the current day's activity, and so on.

### **Event Log**

- **Path:** Event log files are by default placed in the appropriate *All Users* folder for the operating system used, for example C:\ProgramData\Milestone if running Windows Vista.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



To specify another location for your event log files, type the path to the required folder in the *Path* field, or click the browse button next to the field to browse to the required folder.

- **Days to log:** A new log file is created for each day on which events occur. A log file older than the number of days specified in the field is automatically deleted. By default, the log file will be stored for seven days. To specify another number of days (max. 9999), simply overwrite the value in the field. The current day's activity is always logged, even with a value of 0 in the field. Therefore, if you specify 0, you will log current day's activity; if you specify 1, you will keep one day plus the current day's activity, and so on.

## Audit Log

- **Enable audit logging:** Audit logging is the only type of XProtect Enterprise logging which is not compulsory. Select/clear the check box to enable/disable audit logging.
- **Path:** Audit log files are by default placed in the appropriate *All Users* folder for the operating system used, for example C:\ProgramData\Milestone if running Windows Vista. To specify another location for your audit log files, type the path to the required folder in the *Path* field, or click the browse button next to the field to browse to the required folder.
- **Days to log:** A new log file is created for each day with audit logging enabled and client user activity. A log file older than the number of days specified in the field is automatically deleted. By default, the log file will be stored for seven days. To specify another number of days (max. 9999), simply overwrite the value in the field. The current day's activity is always logged (provided audit logging is enabled and there is user activity). Therefore, if you specify 1, you will keep one day plus the current day's activity. Note that if you specify 0 (zero), audit log files will be kept indefinitely (disk space permitting).
- **Minimum logging interval:** Minimum number of seconds between logged events. Specifying a high number of seconds between logged events may help reduce the size of the audit log. Default is 60 seconds.
- **In sequence timespan:** Number of seconds to pass for viewed images to be considered to be within the same sequence. Specifying a high number of seconds may help limit the number of viewed sequences logged, and thus reduce the size of the audit log. Default is ten seconds.

## Log Integrity Checks

All log files, except Management Application log files, are subjected to an integrity check once every 24 hours. The integrity check is performed by XProtect Enterprise's Log Check service. The result of the integrity check is automatically written to a file named according to the structure LogCheck\_YYYYMMDD.log, for example LogCheck\_20091231.log. Like the log files themselves, the log check files are by default placed in the appropriate All Users folder for the operating system used, for example C:\ProgramData\Milestone if running Windows Vista.

Any inconsistencies will be reported in the form of error messages written in the log check file. Possible error messages (other, non-error, messages may also appear in the log check file):

- **Log integrity information was not found. Log integrity can't be guaranteed.**  
The log file could not be checked for integrity.
- **Log information does not match integrity information. Log integrity can't be guaranteed.**

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



The log file exists, but does not contain the expected information. Thus, log integrity cannot be guaranteed.

- ***[Log file name] not found***  
The log file was not present.
- ***[Log file name] is empty***  
The log file was present, but empty.
- ***Last line changed/removed in [log file name]***  
The last line of the log file did not match validation criteria.
- ***Encrypted data missing in [log file name] near line [#]***  
The encrypted part of the log line in question was not present.
- ***Inconsistency found in [log file name] near line [#]***  
The log line does not match the encrypted part.
- ***Inconsistency found in [log file name] at beginning of log file***  
The log file header is not correct. This situation is most likely to occur if a user has attempted to delete the beginning of a log file.



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## Central

---

Central settings are relevant only if you are using the XProtect Central add-on product in connection with XProtect Enterprise.

The *XProtect Central Settings* lets you specify the login settings required for an XProtect Central server to access the surveillance system in order to retrieve status information and alarms.

1. In the Management Application's Navigation pane, expand *Advanced Configuration*, right-click *Central* and select *Properties*.
2. Enable the use of *Central* connections by selecting the *Enable Milestone XProtect Central* check box.
3. Specify required properties:
  - **Enable Milestone XProtect Central connections:** Enables the use of XProtect Central connections, allowing you to specify further properties.
  - **Login Name:** Type the name used for the connection between the XProtect Enterprise and XProtect Central servers. The name must match the name specified on the XProtect Central server itself. Default name is *Name*.
  - **Password:** Type the password used for the connection between the XProtect Enterprise and XProtect Central servers. The password must match the password specified on the XProtect Central server itself. Default password is *Pass*.
  - **Port:** Type the port number to which the XProtect Central server should connect when accessing the XProtect Enterprise server. The port number must match the port number specified on the XProtect Central server itself. Default port is 1237.

When ready, click *OK*.

4. Save your configuration changes by clicking the *Save Configuration* button in the Management Application's toolbar.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## Matrix Video Sharing

The Matrix feature allows distributed viewing of live video from any camera to any Matrix recipient on a network operating with XProtect Enterprise. A computer on which Matrix-triggered video can be viewed is known as a Matrix recipient. In order to become a Matrix recipient, the computer must have either the dedicated Matrix Monitor application or the multi-purpose Smart Client installed.

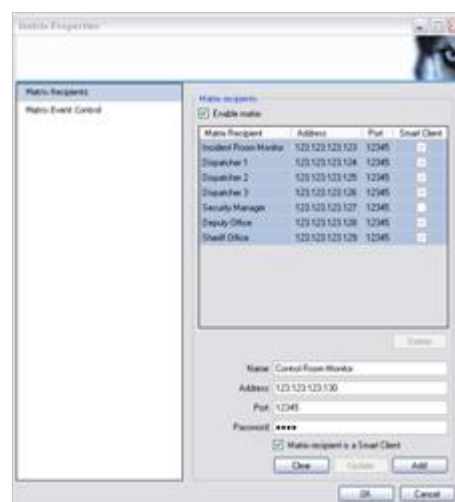
Many users prefer the Smart Client for Matrix viewing purposes since they already use the Smart Client for viewing other types of surveillance video. The Matrix Monitor, however, offers slightly more features, including a pop-up mode, with which you will not see the Matrix Monitor window until there is video to display. On the other hand, the Matrix Monitor is meant for viewing only, whereas with the Smart Client you are able to send video to other Matrix recipients. For more information about Matrix recipients refer to the Matrix Monitor User's Manual and the Smart Client User's Manual, available on the XProtect Enterprise software DVD as well as from [www.milestonesys.com](http://www.milestonesys.com). Also, once installed, the Smart Client has its own built-in help system.

There are two ways in which Matrix-triggered video can appear on a Matrix recipient:

- *Manual triggering*: Another user wants to share important video, and sends it from a Smart Client—or from a custom-made web page—to the required Matrix recipient.
- *Automatic triggering*: Video is sent to the required Matrix recipient automatically when a predefined event occurs; for example when a door sensor detects that a door is opened, or when the surveillance system detects motion in the video from a camera

## Configure Matrix for Manual Video Sharing

1. In the Management Application's Navigation pane, expand *Advanced Configuration*, right-click *Matrix* and select *Properties*.
2. Enable the use of Matrix by selecting the *Enable Matrix* check box.
3. Specify required Matrix Recipients properties (described in the following). When ready, click *OK*, or select *Matrix Event Control* to configure automatically triggered video sharing.
4. Save your configuration changes by clicking the *Save Configuration* button in the Management Application's toolbar.



## Matrix Recipients

The *Matrix Recipients* tab is used for enabling Matrix functionality and for defining on which computers to display Matrix-triggered live video. A computer on which Matrix-triggered video can be displayed is known as a Matrix recipient. Being able to view Matrix-triggered video requires that

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



either a Smart Client or the dedicated Matrix Monitor software (see page 180) is installed on the user's computer.

- **Enable matrix:** Select check box to enable Matrix functionality.
- **[List of Defined Matrix recipients]:** Lists any already defined Matrix recipients, that is computers on which Matrix-triggered video can be displayed. To change the properties of an already defined Matrix recipient, select the required Matrix recipient, then make the changes in the fields below the list, and then click the *Update* button. To remove a Matrix recipient from the list, select the unwanted Matrix recipient, then click the *Delete* button.
- **Delete:** Available only when you have selected a Matrix recipient in the list. Clicking the *Delete* button will remove the selected Matrix recipient. You will be prompted to confirm the removal.
- **Name:** Name for the Matrix recipient. Used when adding a new Matrix recipient or editing the properties of an existing one. The name will appear in various day-to-day usage situations; it is therefore a good idea to use a descriptive and unambiguous name. Matrix recipient names must not contain the following characters: < > & ' " \ / : \* ? | [ ]
- **Address:** IP address of the Matrix recipient, used when adding a new Matrix recipient or editing the properties of an existing one.
- **Port:** Lets you specify the port number to be used when sending commands to the Matrix recipient. Used when adding a new Matrix recipient or editing the properties of an existing one. The Matrix recipient will listen for commands on this port. By default, port 12345 is used; you can of course specify another port number.
- **Password:** Lets you specify the password to be used when communicating with the Matrix recipient. Used when adding a new Matrix recipient or editing the properties of an existing one.
- **Matrix recipient is a Smart Client:** Select check box if the Matrix recipient in question is a Smart Client. Matrix-triggered live video may also be displayed in XProtect Enterprise users' Smart Clients. If a Smart Client is used, distribution of the Matrix-triggered live video takes place slightly differently.
- **Clear:** Removes any content in the *Name*, *Address*, and *Password* fields.
- **Update:** Updates the properties of the selected Matrix recipient with the changes made during editing. Available only if you have edited the properties of an existing Matrix recipient.
- **Add:** Adds the new Matrix recipient to the list. Available only if you have added properties of a new Matrix recipient in the *Name*, *Address*, *Port*, *Password*, and possibly Smart Client fields.

## Configure Matrix for Automatic Video Sharing

1. In the Management Application's Navigation pane, expand *Advanced Configuration*, right-click *Matrix* and select *Properties*.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



2. Enable the use of Matrix by selecting the *Enable Matrix* check box. Specify required Matrix Recipients properties (described in the previous).
3. Select *Matrix Event Control* and configure *Matrix Event Control* properties (described in the following). When ready, click *OK*.
4. Save your configuration changes by clicking the *Save Configuration* button in the Management Application's toolbar.

## Matrix Event Control

The *Matrix Event Control* tab is used for configuring the automatic sending of live video based on predefined events; it lets you define exactly which events and cameras to use on a per-Matrix recipient basis. The *Matrix Event Control* tab displays the list of Matrix recipients defined on the *Matrix Recipients* tab.

Right-clicking a Matrix recipient brings up a list of devices with belonging events. When you select an event, it will initially be highlighted by a red exclamation mark, indicating that there is additional configuration to be done. Right-clicking an event brings up a list of options for the selected event:



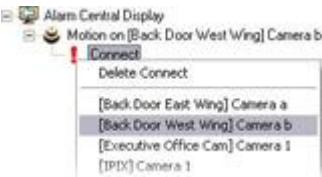
- **Delete [selected event]:** Deletes selected event on selected device.
- **Connect:** Connects to the camera (actual camera is specified after selecting action to be taken)
- **Disconnect, then connect:** Disconnect any existing connections, then connect again. With this option the live video will appear in the Matrix recipient on a first-in-first-out basis. Each time a new event occurs, video from the latest event is displayed prominently in a specific position on the Matrix recipient, while at the same time video from the older events is shifted to less prominent positions and eventually "pushed out" of the Matrix recipient in order to make space for the latest event's video.

With the *Connect* option, you may thus experience that if video triggered by one event on a camera is already shown on the Matrix recipient, videos triggered by another event on the same camera will not be displayed prominently as coming from the latest event – simply because the Matrix recipient is already showing video from the camera in a less prominent position. By selecting *Disconnect, then connect* you can avoid this issue, and ensure that video from the latest event is always displayed prominently.

- **Disconnect:** Disconnects any existing connection. Use if a particular event should cause video to stop being displayed in the Matrix recipient, even if they are not yet old enough to be "pushed out" of the Matrix recipient.

If you selected *Connect*, another red exclamation mark will indicate that there is still some configuration to be done. Right-clicking an action lets you select which camera to apply the action on:

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



In this example, we have specified that when motion is detected on Camera b, the selected Matrix recipient should connect to Camera b:



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



# System

---

## ***Find Version and Plug-in Information***

Knowing the exact version of your XProtect Enterprise system can be important if you require support, want to upgrade your system, etc. In such cases, you may also want to know which plug-ins your XProtect Enterprise system uses.

To view such information, select *About...* in the Management Application's *Help* menu.

**Tip:** This way you can also specify a new Software License Code (SLC) if you have upgraded your XProtect Enterprise or otherwise acquired a new SLC (see page 57).

## ***Configure Default File Paths***

XProtect Enterprise uses a number of default file paths:

- **Default recording path for new cameras:** All new cameras you add will by default use this path for storing recordings. If required, you can change individual cameras' recording paths as part of their individual configuration (see page 78), but you can also change the default recording path so all new cameras you add will use a path of your choice.
- **Default archiving path for new cameras:** All new cameras you add will by default use this path for archiving (see page 92). If required, you can change individual cameras' archiving paths as part of their individual configuration, but you can also change the default recording path so all new cameras you add will use a path of your choice. Note that camera-specific archiving paths are not relevant if using dynamic path selection for archiving (see page 65).
- **Configuration path:** The path by default used for storing your XProtect Enterprise system's configuration.

To change any of the default file paths:

1. If changing the configuration path, stop all services (see page 127). This step is not necessary if changing the default recording or archiving path.
2. In the Management Application's menu bar, select *Application Settings > Default File Paths...*
3. You can now overwrite required paths. Alternatively, click the browse button next to the required field and browse to the required location.

For the default recording path, you are only able to specify a path to a folder on a *local* drive. If using a network drive, it would not be possible to save recordings if the network drive became unavailable.

If you change the default recording or archiving paths, and there are existing recordings at the old locations, you will be asked whether you want to move the recordings to the new

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



locations (recommended), leave them at the old locations, or delete them.

4. Click *OK*.
5. Save your configuration changes by clicking the *Save Configuration* button in the Management Application's toolbar.
6. Restart all services (see page 127).

## ***Restore System Configuration from Restore Point***

Restore points allow you to return to a previous configuration state. Each time a configuration change is applied in the Management Application—either by clicking *OK* in a properties dialog or by clicking the *Apply* button in a summary pane—a new restore point is created.

All restore points in the current and previous five sessions are stored and can be selected again. A new session begins each time the Management Application is started as well as each time you save the whole configuration, for example by clicking the *Save Configuration* button in the Management Application's toolbar. For sessions older than the last five sessions, only the latest restore point of each session is stored. With the *Number of old sessions to keep* field you can control how many old sessions are kept.

When selecting to restore a configuration from a restore point, the configuration from the selected restore point will be applied and used once the services are restarted (see *Start & Stop Services* on page 127).

If you have added new cameras or other devices to XProtect Enterprise after the restore point was created, they will be missing if you load the restore point. This is due to the fact that they were not in the system when the restore point was created. In such cases, you will be notified and must decide what to do with recordings from the affected devices.

1. From the Management Application's *File* menu, select *Load Configuration from Restore Point...*
2. In the left part of the *Restore Points* dialog, select the required restore point.

**Tip:** When you select a restore point, you will in the right part of the dialog see information about the configuration state at the selected point in time. This can help you select the best possible restore point.

3. Click the *Load Restore Point* button.
4. If you are sure that you want to overwrite the current configuration with the one from the selected restore point, click *OK*.
5. Only relevant if the current configuration contains cameras or other devices which were not present in the selected restore point: You will be asked whether you want to delete or keep recordings from affected devices. If keeping the recordings, note that they will not be accessible until you add the affected devices to XProtect Enterprise again. Select the required option, and click *OK*.
6. Click *OK* in the *Restore Points* dialog.



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



7. In the Management Application's navigation pane, expand *Advanced Configuration*, and select *Services*.
8. For the Recording Server and Image Server services respectively, click the *Restart* button. When the two services are restarted, the configuration from the selected restore point is applied.

## ***Export and Import System Configuration as Backup or Clone***

You can export the current configuration of your XProtect Enterprise system, either as a safety measure in order to have a backup file of your configuration, or as a clone allowing you to use a similar configuration elsewhere. You are subsequently able to import previously exported configurations.

### **Export Configuration as Backup**

With this option, all relevant XProtect Enterprise configuration files will be combined into one single file, which can then be saved at a location specified by you. Note that if there are unsaved changes to your configuration, they will automatically be saved when you export the configuration.

If you intend to set up an identical version of your surveillance system elsewhere, do not export your configuration as *backup*. Instead, export your configuration as a *clone* (see the following). When you export as a clone, the export takes into account the fact that you will not use the exact same physical hardware devices even though your new system may otherwise be identical to your existing one.

1. In the Management Application's *File* menu, select *Export Configuration - Backup*.
2. Browse to the location at which you want to store the exported configuration, specify a suitable file name, and click *Save*.

### **Export Configuration as Clone**

With this option, all relevant XProtect Enterprise configuration files will be collected and GUIDs (Globally Unique IDentifiers; unique 128-bit numbers used for identifying individual system components, such as cameras) will be marked for later replacement.

**Why are GUIDs marked for replacement?** GUIDs are marked for later replacement because they refer to specific components (cameras, etc.). Even though you wish to use the cloned configuration for setting up a new similar system using similar types of cameras, the new system would not use the exact same cameras as the cloned system. When the cloned configuration is later used in a new system, the GUIDs will therefore be replaced with GUIDs representing the specific components of the new system.

After GUIDs have been marked for replacement, the configuration files will be combined into one single file, which can then be saved at a location specified by you. Note that if there are unsaved changes to your configuration, they will automatically be saved when you export the configuration.

1. In the Management Application's *File* menu, select *Export Configuration - Clone*.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



2. Browse to the location at which you want to store the exported configuration, specify a suitable file name, and click *Save*.

## Import Previously Exported Configuration

The same import method is used regardless of whether the configuration was exported as a backup or a clone.

1. In the Management Application's *File* menu, select *Import Configuration*.
2. Browse to the location from which you want to import the configuration, select the required configuration file, and click *Open*.
3. Only relevant if the system into which you import the configuration contains devices (cameras, etc.) which are not present in the imported configuration: You will be asked whether you want to delete or keep recordings from affected devices. If keeping the recordings, note that they will not be accessible until you add the affected devices to XProtect Enterprise again. Select the required option, and click *OK*.
4. In the Management Application's navigation pane, expand *Advanced Configuration*, and select *Services*.
5. For the Recording Server and Image Server services respectively, click the *Restart* button. When the two services are restarted, the imported configuration is applied.

## Import Changes to Configuration

The same import method is used regardless of whether the configuration was exported as a backup or a clone.

1. In the Management Application's *File* menu, select *Import Configuration*.
2. Browse to the location from which you want to import the configuration, select the required configuration file, and click *Open*.
3. Only relevant if the system into which you import the configuration contains devices (cameras, etc.) which are not present in the imported configuration: You will be asked whether you want to delete or keep recordings from affected devices. If keeping the recordings, note that they will not be accessible until you add the affected devices to XProtect Enterprise again. Select the required option, and click *OK*.
4. In the Management Application's navigation pane, expand *Advanced Configuration*, and select *Services*.
5. For the Recording Server and Image Server services respectively, click the *Restart* button. When the two services are restarted, the imported configuration is applied.

## CSV File Format and Requirements

The CSV file must have a header line (determining what each value on the subsequent lines is about), and subsequent lines must each contain information about one hardware device only. A minimum of information is always required for each hardware device:

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



- **HardwareOldMacAddress**

The MAC address of the hardware device used in the template configuration. Required format: 12 hex characters without spaces or six groups of two hex characters separated with dashes (-) or colons (:).

You can furthermore include these optional parameters:

- **HardwareNewMacAddress**

The MAC address of the new hardware device to be used in the real configuration. Required format: 12 hex characters without spaces or six groups of two hex characters separated with dashes (-) or colons (:).

- **HardwareAddress**

IP address of the hardware device. Required format: IPv4 or IPv6.

- **HardwareUsername**

User name for hardware device's administrator account.

In the extremely rare cases where a particular user name has previously been required for a device, but you now want the user name to be <blank>, you cannot use the CSV file to specify <blank>. The reason is that no information is interpreted as "leave the user name as it currently is." If you need the new user name to be <blank>, you should not change it through the CCV file. Instead, change it as part of the hardware device's Network, Device Type & License properties (see page 59) after you have imported the other changes through the CSV file.

- **HardwarePassword**

Password for hardware device's administrator account.

In the extremely rare cases where a particular password has previously been required for a device, but you now want the password to be <blank>, you cannot use the CSV file to specify <blank>. The reason is that no information is interpreted as "leave the password as it currently is." If you need the new password to be <blank>, you should not change it through the CSV file. Instead, change it as part of the hardware device's Network, Device Type & License properties (see page 59) after you have imported the other changes through the CSV file.

- **DLK**

Device License Key (DLK) required in order to use the hardware device with XProtect Enterprise.

- **HardwareDeviceName**

Name of the hardware device. Name must be unique, and must not contain any of the following special characters: < > & ' " \ / : \* ? | [ ]

- **CameraName[number]**

Name of the camera. Must appear as *CameraName1*, *CameraName2*, etc. in the header line since a hardware device can potentially have more than one camera attached. Names must be unique, and must not contain any of the following special characters: < > & ' " \ / : \* ? | [ ]

- **CameraShortcut[number]**

Number for keyboard shortcut access to the camera in the Smart Client. Must appear as *CameraShortcut1*, *CameraShortcut2*, etc. in the header line since a hardware device can potentially have more than one camera attached. A camera shortcut number must not contain any letters or special characters, and must not be longer than eight digits.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



- ***GenerateNewCameraGuid[optional number]***  
Lets you specify whether to generate a new GUID for a camera; this is especially relevant if using a cloned configuration (see page 150) as your template, since all GUIDs are removed from cloned configurations. If specified as, for example, *GenerateNewCameraGuid1*, information relates to a specific camera, otherwise to all cameras attached to the hardware device. Any character means “yes, generate a new GUID.”
- ***PreBufferLength[optional number]***  
Required length (in seconds) of pre-recording. If specified as, for example, *PreBufferLength1*, information relates to a specific camera, otherwise to all cameras attached to the hardware device.
- ***PostBufferLength[optional number]***  
Required length (in seconds) of post-recording. If specified as, for example, *PostBufferLength1*, information relates to a specific camera, otherwise to all cameras attached to the hardware device.
- ***RecordingPath[optional number]***  
Path to the folder in which a camera’s database should be stored. If specified as, for example, *RecordingPath1*, information relates to a specific camera, otherwise to all cameras attached to the hardware device.
- ***ArchivePath[optional number]***  
Path to the folder in which the camera’s archived recordings (see page 92) should be stored. Remember that an archiving path is only relevant if not using dynamic paths for archiving (see page 65). If specified as, for example, *ArchivePath1*, information relates to a specific camera, otherwise to all cameras attached to the hardware device.
- ***OldRecordingsNewPath[optional number]***  
Lets you specify what to do with old recordings in case *RecordingPath* or *ArchivePath* have been changed. If this parameter is not specified, default behavior is *Leave* (see the following). If specified as, for example, *OldRecordingsNewPath1*, information relates to a specific camera, otherwise to all cameras attached to the hardware device. Valid options are: *Delete* (deletes old recordings), *Leave* (leaves old recordings for offline investigation but unavailable for online system), or *Move* (moves old recordings to archive).
- ***OldRecordingsNewMac[optional number]***  
Lets you specify what to do with old recordings in case a new MAC address has been specified for the hardware device. If this parameter is not specified, default behavior is *Leave* (see the following). If specified as, for example, *OldrecordingsNewMac1*, information relates to a specific camera, otherwise to all cameras attached to the hardware device. Valid options are: *Delete* (deletes old recordings), *Leave* (leaves old recordings for offline investigation but unavailable for online system), or *Inherit* (renames all old recording folders according to the new MAC address, thus making them available for the online system).
- ***RetentionTime[optional number]***  
Required retention time (in minutes). Remember that retention time is the total of recording time plus archiving time. If specified as, for example, *RetentionTime1*, information relates to a specific camera, otherwise to all cameras attached to the hardware device.
- ***MjpegLiveFrameRate[optional number]***  
Required MJPEG live frame rate (in number of frames; depending on what has been configured on the camera, it will then know whether it is frames per second, minute, or hour). If specified as, for example, *MjpegLiveFrameRate1*, information relates to a specific

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



camera, otherwise to all cameras attached to the hardware device.

- ***MjpegRecordingFrameRate[optional number]***  
Required MJPEG recording frame rate (in number of frames; depending on what has been configured on the camera, it will then know whether it is frames per second, minute, or hour). If you need to specify a value which includes a decimal separator, use the full stop character (example: 7.62). If specified as, for example, *MjpegRecordingFrameRate1*, information relates to a specific camera, otherwise to all cameras attached to the hardware device.
- ***MotionSensitivity[optional number]***  
A value between 0-256; corresponds to using the *Sensitivity* slider when configuring motion detection settings in the Management Application. If specified as, for example, *MotionSensitivity1*, information relates to a specific camera, otherwise to all cameras attached to the hardware device.
- ***MotionDetectionThreshold[optional number]***  
A value between 0-10000; corresponds to using the *Motion* slider when configuring motion detection settings in the Management Application. If specified as, for example, *MotionDetectionThreshold1*, information relates to a specific camera, otherwise to all cameras attached to the hardware device.
- ***MotionDetectionInterval[optional number]***  
Lets you specify how often motion detection analysis should be carried out on video from the camera. Specified in milliseconds. The interval is applied regardless of the camera's frame rate settings. If specified as, for example, *MotionDetectionInterval1*, information relates to a specific camera, otherwise to all cameras attached to the hardware device.
- ***ServerName***  
Name with which the XProtect Enterprise will appear when listed in clients. Name must be unique, and must not contain any of the following special characters: < > & ' " \ / : \* ? | [ ]
- ***ServerPort***  
Port number to use for communication between the XProtect Enterprise server and clients.
- ***OnlineVerification***  
If this parameter is used, all online hardware devices found using *HardwareOldMacAddress* are updated. All other hardware devices are not updated. Any character means "yes, use online verification."

Existing configuration parameters that are not specified in CSV file will remain unchanged. If a parameter value for an individual camera in the CSV file is empty, the existing parameter value will remain unchanged on that camera.

Most system integrators store hardware device information in spreadsheets like Microsoft Excel, from which they can save the information as comma-separated values in a CSV file. These examples show hardware information in Excel (1) and when exported to a CSV file (2); note the header lines:

	A	B	C
1	HardwareAddress	HardwareUsername	HardwarePassword
2	192.168.200.220	AdminAccountUserName	t0p5eCR3tpa55w0rd
3	192.168.200.221	AdminAccountUserName	TOPsecretPASSWORD
4	192.168.200.222	RootaccountUserName	ToPsEcReTpAsSw0rD
5	192.168.200.223	AdminAccountUserName	T0PS3Cr3Tp5Sw0rD

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



2 

```
HardwareAddress;HardwareUsername;HardwarePassword;Har
192.168.200.220;AdminAccountUserName;t0p5eCR3tpa55w0
192.168.200.221;AdminAccountUserName;TOPsecretPASSwo
192.168.200.222;RootaccountUserName;ToPsECReTpASsw0
192.168.200.223;AdminAccountUserName;TOPS3Cr3TpA55w0
```

Whichever method is used, the following applies:

- The first line of the CSV file must contain the headers, and subsequent lines must contain information about one hardware device each
- Separators can be commas, semicolons or tabs, but cannot be mixed
- All lines must contain valid values—pay special attention to the fact that camera names, user names, etc. must be unique, and must not contain any of the following special characters: < > & ' " \ / : \* ? | [ ]
- There is no fixed order of values, and optional parameters can be omitted entirely
- Boolean fields are considered true unless set to 0, false or no
- Lines containing only separators are ignored
- Empty lines are ignored
- Even though the CSV file format is generally ASCII only, Unicode identifiers are allowed; even without Unicode identifiers, the entire file or even individual characters are allowed to be Unicode strings

If you need to include separator characters in a value—for example if a camera name is Reception; Camera 1—you can encapsulate the value in quotes to indicate that the separator should not be interpreted as separating values in the file. Such quote-encapsulated values are interpreted as they appear. If a separator, a quote or a space is needed in a value, the whole value has to be encapsulated in quotes. Leading and trailing spaces outside the quote-encapsulated value are removed, while spaces inside the quote-encapsulated value are maintained. No characters (except spaces) are allowed outside the quote-encapsulated value. A double quote inside a quote-encapsulated value is interpreted as a single quote. Nested quotes (quotes inside quotes) are not allowed. Some examples (using semicolon as the separator):

- "camera"; is interpreted as camera
- "cam;"era"; is interpreted as cam;"era
- """camera"""; is interpreted as "camera"
- ""; is interpreted as an empty string
- ...; " cam"" era " ;... is interpreted as | cam" era | (where the character | is not part of the interpretation but only used to show the start and end of the interpretation)
- ""camera; is not valid as there are characters outside the quote-encapsulated value
- "cam" "era"; is not valid as the two quotes are separated with a space and quotes cannot be nested
- "cam"er"a"; is not valid as you cannot nest quotes
- cam"era"; is not valid as there are characters outside the quotes

## Back Up System Configuration

We recommend that you make regular backups of your XProtect Enterprise configuration (cameras, schedules, views, etc.) as a disaster recovery measure. While it is rare to lose your configuration, it



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



can happen under unfortunate circumstances. Luckily, it takes only a minute to back up your existing configuration.

The following describes backup of the configuration in XProtect Enterprise version 7.0. If you need information about how to back up configuration from an earlier version of XProtect Enterprise—a typical need when upgrading to XProtect Enterprise 7.0 from an earlier version—see Upgrade from a Previous Version on page 22.

In the following, we assume that you have not changed XProtect Enterprise's default configuration path (see page 148), which is *C:\Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\Milestone\Milestone Surveillance* on servers running Windows XP or Windows Server 2003, and *C:\Program Data\Milestone\Milestone Surveillance* on servers running all other supported operating systems. If you have changed the default configuration path, you must take your changes into consideration when using the method described in the following.

1. If XProtect Enterprise is used on a server running Windows XP or Windows Server 2003, make a copy of the folder *C:\Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\Milestone\Milestone Surveillance* and all of its content.  
  
If XProtect Enterprise is used on a server running any other supported operating system, make a copy of the folder *C:\Program Data\Milestone\Milestone Surveillance* and all of its content.
2. Open the folder *C:\Program Files\Milestone\Milestone Surveillance\devices*, and verify if the file *devices.ini* exists. If the file exists, make a copy of it. The file will exist if you have configured video properties (see page 76) for certain types of cameras; for such cameras, changes to the properties are stored in the file rather than on the camera itself.
3. Store the copies away from the XProtect Enterprise server, so that they will not be affected if the server is damaged, stolen or otherwise affected.

Remember that a backup is a snapshot of your XProtect Enterprise system configuration at the time of backing up. If you later change your configuration, your backup will not reflect the most recent changes. Therefore, back up your system configuration regularly.

**Tip:** When you back up your configuration as described, the backup will include restore points (see page 149). This allows you to not only restore the backed-up configuration, but also to revert to an earlier point in that configuration if required.

To restore your backed-up configuration:

1. If XProtect Enterprise is used on a server running Windows XP or Windows Server 2003, copy the content of the backed-up *Milestone Surveillance* folder into *C:\Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\Milestone\Milestone Surveillance*.  
  
If XProtect Enterprise is used on a server running any other supported operating system, copy the content of the backed-up *Milestone Surveillance* folder into *C:\Program Data\Milestone\Milestone Surveillance*
2. If you backed up the file *devices.ini*, copy the file into *C:\Program Files\Milestone\Milestone Surveillance\devices*



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.

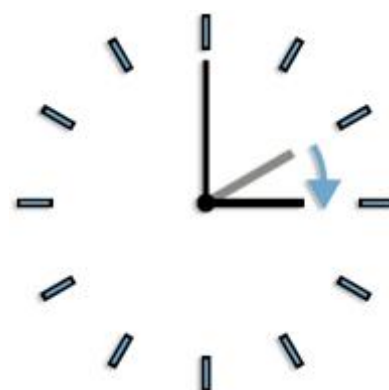


## ***Handle Daylight Saving Time***

Daylight saving time (DST, also known as summer time) is the practice of advancing clocks in order for evenings to have more daylight and mornings to have less. Typically, clocks are adjusted forward one hour sometime during the spring season and adjusted backward sometime during the fall season, hence the saying *spring forward, fall back*. Note that use of DST varies between countries/regions. When working with a surveillance system, which is inherently time-sensitive, it is important to know how the system handles DST.

### **Spring: Switch from Standard Time to DST**

The change from standard time to DST is not much of an issue since you jump one hour forward. Typically, the clock jumps forward from 02:00 standard time to 03:00 DST, and the day thus has 23 hours. In that case, there is simply no data between 02:00 and 03:00 in the morning since that hour, for that day, did not exist.



### **Fall: Switch from DST to Standard Time**

When you switch from DST to standard time in the fall, you jump one hour back. Typically, the clock jumps backward from 02:00 DST to 01:00 standard time, repeating that hour, and the day thus has 25 hours. In that case, you will reach 01:59:59, then immediately revert back to 01:00:00. If the system did not react, it would essentially re-record that hour, so the first instance of, for example, 01:30 would be overwritten by the second instance of 01:30.

Because of this, XProtect Enterprise will forcefully archive the current video in the event that the system time changes by more than five minutes. The first instance of the 01:00 hour will not be viewable directly from clients. However, the data is recorded and safe, and it can be browsed using the Viewer application (see page 181) by opening the archived database directly.

## ***Improve Stability with 3 GB Operating System Virtual Memory***

Microsoft Windows 32-bit operating systems can address 4 GB of virtual memory. The operating system kernel reserves 2 GB for itself, and each individual running process is allowed to address another 2 GB. This is Windows' default setting, and for the vast majority of XProtect Enterprise installations it works fine.

As from XProtect Enterprise 6.5d, the main components of the server—the Recording Server service and the Image Server service—have been compiled with the LARGEADDRESSAWARE flag. This means you can optimize the memory usage of XProtect Enterprise's Recording Server and Image Server services by configuring your 32-bit Windows operating system so that it restricts the kernel to 1GB of memory, leaving 3GB of address space for processes compiled with the LARGEADDRESSAWARE flag.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



This should improve the stability of especially the Recording Server service by allowing it to exceed the previous 2 GB virtual memory limit, making it possible for it to use up to 3 GB of memory. The change in Windows configuration is known as 3 GB switching.

## When Is 3 GB Switching Relevant?

For very large XProtect Enterprise installations and/or for installations with many megapixel cameras it can be relevant to change Windows' settings so that only 1 GB of virtual memory is reserved for the operating system kernel, leaving 3 GB for running processes.

If using Windows' default setting, with only 2 GB virtual memory reserved for running processes, it has been seen that the Recording Server service in very large installations of XProtect Enterprise may:

- Behave erratically if getting very close to the 2 GB virtual memory limit. Symptoms can include database corruption, and client-server or camera-server communication errors.
- Become unstable and crash if exceeding the 2 GB virtual memory limit. During such crashes, the code managing the surveillance system databases is not closed properly, and databases will become corrupt. In case of a crash, Windows will normally restart the Recording Server service. However, when the Recording Server service is restarted, one of its first tasks will be to repair the databases. The database repair process can in some cases take several hours, depending on the amount of data in the corrupted databases.

If you experience such problems, and you run XProtect Enterprise 6.5d or newer, making Windows use 3 GB for running processes is likely to solve the problems.

If you have not experienced such problems, but you run XProtect Enterprise 6.5d or newer and your XProtect Enterprise installation is very large and/or features many megapixel cameras, 3 GB switching is likely to help prevent the problems from occurring.

The way to configure 32-bit Windows to be LARGEADDRESSAWARE depends on your type of Windows operating system. In the following, you will see two methods outlining Microsoft's recommended procedure for increasing the per-process memory limit to 3 GB. Use the first method if running Windows XP Professional or Windows Server 2003. Use the second method if running Windows 2008 Server, Windows Vista Business, Windows Vista Enterprise or Windows Vista Ultimate.

## What to Do on Window XP Professional or Windows Server 2003

**IMPORTANT:** Improper modification of boot.ini can render the operating system inoperable. Milestone Systems do not assume any responsibility for changes you make to the operating system.

### *Adding the 3 GB Switch*

The following technique can be used to add the 3 GB switch to the boot.ini file. From a command prompt, enter the following to add the 3 GB switch to the end of the first line of the operating system section in the boot.ini file (requires administrative privileges):

```
BOOTCFG /RAW "/3GB" /A /ID 1
```

Where

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



- */RAW* specifies the operating system options for the boot entry. The previous operating system options will be modified.
- *"/3GB"* specifies the 3 GB switch.
- */A* specifies that the operating system options entered with the */RAW* switch will be appended to the existing operating system options.
- */ID* specifies the boot entry ID in the OS Load Options section of the boot.ini file to add the operating system options to. The boot entry ID number can be obtained by performing the command *BOOTCFG /QUERY* (this displays the contents of the boot.ini file) at the command prompt.

A reboot is required after editing the boot.ini file for the changes to take effect.

### **Removing the 3 GB Switch**

If you want to undo the 3 GB switch mentioned above, follow this procedure:

Select *Start > Control Panel*, and double-click the *System* icon. Select the *Advanced* tab, and click the *Settings* button in the *Startup and Recovery* section. Click the *Edit* button in the *System Startup* section. The boot.ini file will launch in an editor. Remove the *"/3GB"* from the end of the appropriate boot entry line under the [operating systems] section. Save and close the file. Click *OK* in the *Startup and Recovery* section.

A reboot is required after editing the boot.ini file for the changes to take effect.

## **What to Do on Windows 2008 Server or Windows Vista**

**IMPORTANT:** Improper modification of the operating system boot entry can render the operating system inoperable. Milestone Systems do not assume any responsibility for changes you make to the operating system.

### **Adding the 3 GB Switch**

Select *Start > All Programs > Accessories*, right-click *Command Prompt*, and select *Run as administrator*, then click *Continue*.

Enter the following command to add the 3 GB switch to the current operating system boot entry:

```
BCDEDIT /SET INCREASEUSERVA 3072
```

Where

- *USERVA* Specifies an alternate amount of user-mode virtual address space for operating systems.
- *3072* Specifies 3 GB (3072 MB).

A reboot is required after editing the boot configuration data store for the changes to take effect.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## **Removing the /3GB Switch**

Select *Start > All Programs > Accessories*, right-click *Command Prompt*, and select *Run as administrator*, then click *Continue*. Enter the following command to remove the 3 GB switch from the current operating system boot entry:

```
BCDEDIT /DELETEVALUE INCREASEUSERSVA
```

A reboot is required after editing the boot configuration data store for the changes to take effect.

## **Protect Recording Databases from Corruption**

In the Management Application you can select which action to take if a camera database becomes corrupted. The actions include several database repair options. While being able to select such actions is highly valuable, it is of course even better to take steps to ensure that your camera databases do not become corrupted.

## **Power Outages: Use a UPS**

The single biggest reason for corrupt databases is the surveillance system server being shut down abruptly, without files being saved and without the operating system being closed down properly. This may happen due to power outages, due to somebody accidentally pulling out the server's power cable, or similar.

The best way of protecting your surveillance system server from being shut down abruptly is to equip your surveillance system server with a UPS (Uninterruptible Power Supply).

The UPS works as a battery-driven secondary power source, providing the necessary power for saving open files and safely powering down your system in the event of power irregularities. UPSs vary in sophistication, but many UPSs include software for automatically saving open files, for alerting system administrators, etc.

Selecting the right type of UPS for your organization's environment is an individual process. When assessing your needs, however, do bear in mind the amount of runtime you will require the UPS to be able to provide if the power fails; saving open files and shutting down an operating system properly may take several minutes.

## **Windows Task Manager: Be Careful when Ending Processes**

When working in Windows Task Manager, be careful not to end any processes which affect the surveillance system. If you end an application or system service by clicking *End Process* in the Windows Task Manager, the process in question will not be given the chance to save its state or data before it is terminated. This may in turn lead to corrupt camera databases.

Windows Task Manager will typically display a warning if you attempt to end a process. Unless you are absolutely sure that ending the process will not affect the surveillance system, make sure you click the *No* button when the warning message asks you if you really want to terminate the process.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## Hard Disk Failure: Protect Your Drives

Hard disk drives are mechanical devices, and as such they are vulnerable to external factors. The following are examples of external factors which may damage hard disk drives and lead to corrupt camera databases:

- Vibration (make sure the surveillance system server and its surroundings are stable)
- Strong heat (make sure the server has adequate ventilation)
- Strong magnetic fields (avoid)
- Power outages (make sure you use a UPS; see more information in the previous)
- Static electricity (make sure you ground yourself if you are going to handle a hard disk drive).
- Fire, water, etc. (avoid)

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## Drivers

---

### ***Update Video Device Drivers***

Video device drivers are small programs used for controlling/communicating with the camera devices connected to the XProtect Enterprise system. Video device drivers are installed automatically during the initial installation of your XProtect Enterprise system. However, new versions of video device drivers—so-called Device Packs—are released and made available for free on [www.milestonesys.com](http://www.milestonesys.com) from time to time.

We recommend that you always use the latest version of video device drivers. When updating video device drivers, there is no need to remove the old video device drivers first; simply install the latest version on top of any old version you may have.

**IMPORTANT:** When you install new video device drivers, your system will not be able to communicate with camera devices from the moment you begin the installation until the moment installation is complete and you have restarted the Recording Server service. Usually, the process takes no longer than a few minutes, but it is highly recommended that you perform the update at a time when you do not expect important incidents to take place.

1. On the XProtect Enterprise server on which you want to install the new video device drivers version, shut down any running surveillance software, including any running Recording Server service.
2. Double-click the downloaded video device driver file *DeviceInstaller.exe* to begin installation.

Depending on your security settings, one or more Windows security warnings may appear after you click the link. If such security warnings appear, accept security warnings by clicking the *Run* button (button may have other name; exact button name depends on your operating system version).

3. Select required language, and click *OK*. This will open the *Video Device Driver Setup Wizard*, which will guide you through the installation. Click the *Next* button and follow the wizard.
4. When the wizard is complete, remember to start the Recording Server service again.

### ***Driver IDs***

You find the list of hardware driver IDs for use with the Replace Hardware Wizard as an appendix on page 194 of this manual.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## Clients and Ancillary Applications

Users can get client access to the XProtect Enterprise surveillance system in different ways:

- With a **Smart Client**. Very feature-rich and highly flexible for future integration of plugins, etc. Installed locally on users' computers. Once installed, the Smart Client has its own built-in help system.

Alternatively, refer to the Smart Client User's Manual, available on the XProtect Enterprise software DVD as well as from [www.milestonesys.com](http://www.milestonesys.com). Related topics in this manual: Install Smart Client from Server (page 165)

- Install Smart Client from DVD (page 165) • Install Smart Client Silently (page 166)



- With a **Remote Client**. Does not offer nearly as many features as the Smart Client. The main benefit of the Remote Client is that it is accessed through a browser and run directly from the surveillance system server. This eliminates the need for installing any client software on the user's computer.

The Remote Client User's Manual is available on the XProtect Enterprise software DVD as well as from [www.milestonesys.com](http://www.milestonesys.com). In this manual you can read about accessing the Remote Client on page 167.



- With a **PDA Client** (see page 168). Enables remote access to the surveillance system via a PDA (Personal Digital Assistant; a handheld computer device) with a wireless connection. Example: With handheld remote access, first responders to accidents, burglaries, fires, etc. can view live as well as recorded video of the incidents while on their way to the incidents. Requires that the PDA Server software (included with XProtect Enterprise) is installed as a front-end to the surveillance system.

The PDA Client User's Manual is available on the XProtect Enterprise software DVD as well as from [www.milestonesys.com](http://www.milestonesys.com).



Surveillance system administrators manage clients' access to the surveillance system through the Management Application. Recordings viewed by clients are provided by the surveillance system's Image Server service. The service runs in the background on the surveillance system server; it does not require separate hardware.

In order to get hold of a Remote Client or Smart Client, users connect to the surveillance system server which will present them with a welcome page.

The welcome page will list the available clients and language versions. Surveillance system administrators use the Download Manager (see page 175) to control which clients and language versions should be available to users on the welcome page. The PDA Client software is available on the XProtect Enterprise software DVD, and is installed on the PDA itself using a PC with Microsoft ActiveSync.



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



When deciding which access client solution is the best choice for your organization, you may find it helpful to review the following. Note that systems and requirements differ from organization to organization. The following questions and answers are thus for guidance only.

***Do you require a handheld solution?***

- **Yes:** Use the PDA Client/Server solution. If required, you can of course combine the PDA solution with other remote access solutions, such as the Smart Client.
- **No:** Determine your needs based on the questions and answers provided in the following.

***Is it acceptable to install client software on remote users' computers?***

- **Yes:** Use the Smart Client.
- **No:** Use the Remote Client; remote users run the Remote Client straight from the XProtect Enterprise server.

***Will you require a large amount of future flexibility from your remote access solution?***

- **Yes:** Use the Smart Client. The Smart Client offers a high degree of flexibility for integration of new features, plugins, etc.
- **No:** Use the Remote Client.

***Do you require a very feature-rich client application?***

- **Yes:** Use the Smart Client. The Smart Client offers considerably more features than the other solutions.
- **No:** Use the Remote Client.

***Do you require a large amount of flexibility re. remote users' ability to export data for use as evidence, etc.?***

- **Yes:** Use the Smart Client. The Smart Client offers the ability to—individual user rights permitting—export data in the AVI (movie clip) and JPEG (still image) as well as XProtect Enterprise database formats.
- **No:** Use the Remote Client. The Remote Client offers the ability to—individual user rights permitting—export evidence in the AVI and JPEG formats.

***Will you use a .NET-based client application?***

The .NET software development platform allows the interconnection of computers and services for the exchange and combination of data and objects. The platform makes extensive use of so-called web services, which provide the ability to use the web rather than single applications for various services. This in turn provides the ability for centralized data storage as well as automated updating and synchronization of information. The .NET platform enhances software developers' ability to create re-usable and customizable modules, which makes it possible to develop highly flexible software solutions. You can therefore, as a rule of thumb, expect .NET-based software to be highly flexible, ready for integration of new features, plugins, etc. However, organizations and their requirements are different, and some organizations find that the high degree of interconnection of services and computers inherent in a .NET-based solution is not desirable. Instead, such organizations rely on more classic Windows solutions.

- **Yes:** Use the Smart Client. The .NET-based Smart Client offers more features for remote users than the other solutions. .NET Framework, downloadable from <http://www.microsoft.com/downloads/>, is required on computers running the Smart Client. See separate the Smart Client documentation for exact system requirements.
- **No:** Use the Remote Client. The Remote Client is not a .NET-based solution.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



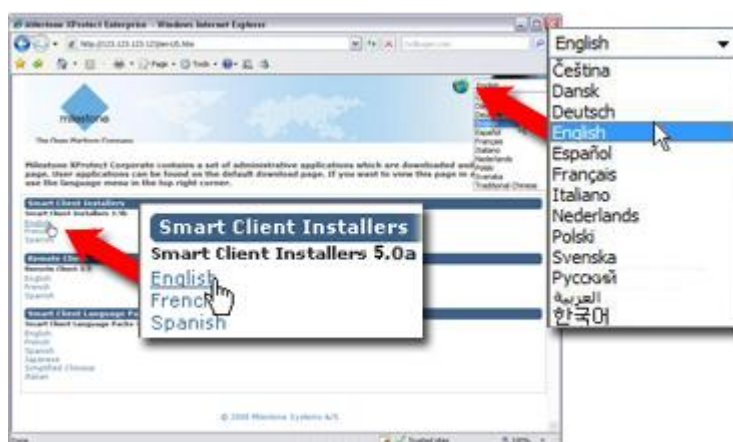
## Smart Client

### Install Smart Client from Server

Typically, you download the Smart Client from the surveillance system server, then install it on your computer. Alternatively, your surveillance system administrator may ask you to install the Smart Client from a DVD (see Install Smart Client from DVD on page 165).

Surveillance system administrators can automatically get a Smart Client installed on the surveillance system server; this happens as part of the surveillance system server installation. To download and install the Smart Client from the surveillance system server, do the following:

1. Verify that your computer meets the Smart Client's minimum system requirements (see page 16).
2. Open an Internet Explorer browser (version 6.0 or later), and connect to the surveillance system server at the URL or IP address specified by your system administrator. When you are connected to the surveillance system server, you will see a welcome page.
3. On the welcome page, select your required language in the menu in the top right corner. Then go to the welcome page's *Smart Client Installers* section, and click the required Smart Client language version link.



Example: Selecting welcome page language and required Smart Client language version. Number of available languages may be different in your organization.

4. Depending on your security settings, you may receive one or more security warnings (*Do you want to run or save this file?*, *Do you want to run this software?* or similar; exact wording depends on your browser version). When this is the case, accept the security warnings (by clicking *Run* or similar; exact button names depend on your browser version).
5. The *Smart Client Setup Wizard* begins. In the wizard, click *Next*, and follow the installation instructions.

### Install Smart Client form DVD

Typically, you download the Smart Client from the surveillance system server, then install it on your computer. Alternatively, your surveillance system administrator may ask you to install the Smart Client from a DVD:

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



1. Verify that your computer meets the Smart Client's minimum system requirements (see page 16).
2. Insert the surveillance system software DVD, wait for a short while, select required language, then click the *Install Milestone XProtect Smart Client* link.
3. Depending on your security settings, you may receive one or more security warnings (*Do you want to run or save this file?*, *Do you want to run this software?* or similar; exact wording depends on your browser version). When this is the case, accept the security warnings (by clicking *Run* or similar; exact button names depend on your browser version).
4. When the installation wizard starts, click *Next* to continue the installation and follow the steps in the installation wizard.

## Install Smart Client Silently

For surveillance system administrators, it is possible to deploy the Smart Client to users' computers using tools such as Microsoft Systems Management Server (SMS). Such tools let administrators build up databases of hardware and software on local networks. The databases can then—among other things—be used for distributing and installing software applications, such as the Smart Client, over local networks.

1. Locate the self-extracting Smart Client installation (.exe) file.

You find the file in a subfolder under the folder *httpdocs*. The *httpdocs* folder is located under the folder in which your Milestone surveillance software is installed. The path would thus typically be C:\Program Files\Milestone\Milestone Surveillance\httpdocs\Smart Client Installers\[version number]\[language]\[language code].

For example, an English-language version of the Smart Client installation file could be located at C:\Program Files\Milestone\Milestone Surveillance\httpdocs\Smart Client Installers\3.5b\English\en-US.

2. With an extraction tool, such as WinZip® or similar, extract the files contained in the installation file to a folder of your choice.

When extraction is done, the folder to which you extracted will contain a small number of files, among these a file with the extension *.msi*. The *.msi* file is a Microsoft Windows Installer installation package covering the complete Smart Client installation procedure.

3. You can now use your systems management tool to deploy the *.msi* file.

Alternatively, you can simply copy the *.msi* file to required computers, and run the *.msi* file from a command prompt. Examples:

```
C:\Documents and Settings\you>msiexec /i "C:\folder_to_which_file_
was_copied\SmartClientInstaller.msi" /quiet
```

where *msiexec* calls the Windows Installer, the parameter */i* indicates that you want to install, and the parameter */quiet* indicates a silent installation.

On the target computer, the Smart Client is by default installed in C:\Program Files\Milestone\Milestone Smart Client. With the *TARGETDIR* property, you are able to specify a different installation folder. Example:

```
C:\Documents and Settings\you>msiexec /I "C:\folder_to_which_file_
was_copied\SmartClientInstaller.msi" /quiet TARGETDIR=C:\required_
```

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



installation\_folder\

## Remote Client

The main benefit of the Remote Client is that it is accessed through a browser and run directly from the surveillance system server. This eliminates the need for installing any client software on the user's computer. To access the Remote Client:

1. Open an Internet Explorer browser (version 6.0 or later), and connect to surveillance system server. The address format is typically:

`http://[surveillance_system_server_address]:[port_number]`

**Tip:** The port number is only required if using another port than the default port for XProtect Enterprise's Image Server service, port 80.

When you connect to the server, you will see a welcome page. On the welcome page, click the Remote Client link in order to view the Remote Client login dialog.

2. To log in, specify information in the following fields:
  - **Previous Logins:** Only available if you have logged in before. Lets you reuse previously specified login details (except any password, which you must always type yourself). This can greatly speed up the login process.
  - **Address:** Type the URL or IP address of the surveillance system server.
  - **Port:** Specify the port number to use when logging in to the Remote Client. In most circumstances, port 80 is used.
  - **Authentication:** Select required authentication method.
    - *Windows (current user)*, with which you will be authenticated through your current Windows login, and do not have to specify any user name or password. This is the default authentication method, that is the method which is automatically used unless you select another method.
    - *Windows*, with which you will be authenticated through your Windows login, but you will need to type your Windows user name and password.
    - *Basic*, with which you will be authenticated through a user/password combination defined on the surveillance system server.
  - **Username:** Type your user name. The user name is case-sensitive, that is there is a difference between typing, for example, amanda and Amanda.
  - **Password:** Type your password. The password is case-sensitive.
3. Click the *Login* link. After a short wait, you get access to the Remote Client. Content in the Remote Client is grouped on three tabs: *Live*, *Playback* and *Setup*.

The *Live* tab is used for viewing live video from cameras, the *Playback* tab is used for finding and playing back recorded video, and the *Setup* tab is used for configuring the Remote Client.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



**Where can I find more information about the Remote Client?** Refer to the Remote Client User's Manual, available on the XProtect Enterprise software DVD as well as from [www.milestonesys.com](http://www.milestonesys.com).

## ***PDA Server and Client***

### **Install and Configure PDA Server**

The PDA Server is installed on an Internet Information Services (IIS) server, and is used as a front-end to the XProtect Enterprise system. The PDA Server handles login and session requests between the PDA Client and XProtect Enterprise. The PDA Server also handles resizing of surveillance video to fit the screen layout of the PDA Client.

The PDA Server does not support Windows authentication. When using XProtect Enterprise's Management Application to define users with access through the PDA Server/PDA Client solution, make sure you add the users with the authentication method *basic authentication*.

Before the PDA Server can be installed on a server, Internet Information Services (IIS) and Microsoft .NET Framework 2.0 (version 2.0.50727) must be installed and configured on the server.

The following procedures describe installation of the PDA Server as the only application using IIS on the server, and with its default settings. If IIS is also used for other applications, it is recommended that you consult an experienced IIS administrator prior to installing the PDA Server.

### ***IIS Installation***

The following procedure describes IIS installation on Windows XP. If you are using Windows 2000 Server or Windows 2003 Server, IIS and .NET Framework are normally installed during the installation of the operating system.

1. In Windows' *Start* menu, select *Control Panel*, then *Add or Remove Programs*.
2. In the left part of the *Add or Remove Programs* dialog, click *Add/Remove Windows Components*. This will open the *Windows Components Wizard*.
3. In the wizard's *Components* list, select *Internet Information Services (IIS)* and click *Next*:



4. Follow the wizard's instructions to complete the installation.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## **.NET Framework Verification**

.NET Framework version 2.0 must be installed on the server in order to be able to run the *PDA Server*. Note that later versions of .NET Framework may also be present on the server. If .NET Framework 2.0 *as well as* one or more later versions are present on the server, Windows' default settings may cause a later .NET Framework version to be used instead of .NET Framework 2.0.

To verify/change which .NET Framework version is used, do the following:

1. Click *Start*, and select *Control Panel*.
2. Click *Administrative Tools*.
3. Click *Internet Information Services*.
4. In the *Internet Information Services* window's left pane, locate and right-click the *Default Web Site* item.
5. In the resulting menu, select *Properties*. This will open the *Default Web Site Properties* dialog.
6. Select the dialog's *ASP.NET* tab. The .NET Framework version in use will be indicated in the *ASP.NET version* field.
7. If required, change the *ASP.NET version* to *2.0.50727*.
8. Click *OK*.
9. Close the *Internet Information Services* and *Administrative Tools* windows if still open.

## **.NET Framework Registration**

When IIS and .NET Framework are installed, you must register .NET Framework in the IIS:

1. In Windows' *Start* menu, select *Run...*
2. In the *Open* field, type *C:\WINDOWS\Framework\v2.0.50727\aspnet\_regiis.exe -i*

Note that if you also have later .NET versions installed, you may have to type a slightly different path: *C:\WINDOWS\Microsoft.NET\Framework\v2.0.50727\aspnet\_regiis.exe -i*

In both cases, make sure you include the *-i* parameter.

3. Click *OK* to register the .NET Framework in IIS.

## **Allow Use of .NET Framework (Windows 2003 Only)**

When .NET Framework is installed, you must allow use of .NET Framework by doing the following:

1. Click *Start*, and select *Control Panel*.
2. Click *Administrative Tools*.
3. Click *Internet Information Services*.
4. In the *Internet Information Services Manager*'s left pane, select the *Web Service Extensions* item.



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



5. On the *Extended* tab in the *Internet Information Services Manager's* right pane, select *ASP.NET v2.0.50727*, and click the *Allow* button.

**Tip:** When IIS and .NET Framework have been installed and registered, it is a good idea to use Windows Update to check for, and download, any new service packs or security packs.

## IIS Port Configuration

Before you begin installing the PDA Server, you must configure IIS to use the port number on which the PDA Server is going to run:

1. In Windows' *Start* menu, select *Run....*
2. In the *Open* field, type *inetmgr.exe* and click *OK*. This will display the *Internet Information Services* dialog.
3. In the left part of the dialog, expand the *computer* item until you see the *Default Web Site* item.
4. Right-click the *Default Web Site* item, and select *Properties*. This will open the *Default Web Site Properties* dialog.
5. On the dialog's *Web Site* tab, set the *TCP Port* number to the number that PDA Server is going to use (the default port for the PDA Server is 8080), then click *OK*:



6. Back in the *Internet Information Services* dialog, verify that IIS is running. If IIS is not running, start IIS by right-clicking the *Default Web Site* item, then selecting *Start*.

## PDA Server Installation

Having configured the IIS port number, you are ready to begin installation of the PDA Server itself:

1. On the server, insert the XProtect Enterprise software DVD, wait for a short while, select required language, then click the *Install Milestone XProtect PDA Server* link. Alternatively, if you are installing a version downloaded from the internet, run the PDA Server installation file *PDAServerInstaller\_[required language].exe* from the location you have saved it to. Depending on your security settings, you may receive one or more security warnings (*Do you want to run or save this file?, Do you want to run this software?*). When this is the



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



case, click the *Run* button.

2. Read and accept the license agreement. This will take you to the *Image server setup* step.
3. In the *Hostname/IP Address* field, specify the IP address or host name of the XProtect Enterprise server to which the PDA Server should connect.

**Tip:** If installing the PDA Server on the same server as the surveillance system itself, simply specify *Localhost*. If the PDA Server should connect to a master/slave system, specify the IP address or host name of the master server.

In the *Port* field, specify the port number used by XProtect Enterprise's Image Server service (default is port 80), then click *Next*.

4. An *Important Note* is displayed; it is highly recommended that you read it. When ready, click *Next*.
5. On the *Select Installation Address* step, verify that the *Site* and *Virtual directory* settings are as required. Then click *Next* twice.
6. When installation is completed, click the *Close* button.

## Verifying the PDA Server Installation

Before you begin installing and using the PDA Client, it is highly recommended that you verify that the PDA Server is installed correctly: First make sure that the XProtect Enterprise system's Recording Server service and Image Server service are running and that a user with access to relevant cameras has been set up in the Management Application. Then do the following:

**Tip:** You can use a Smart Client or Remote Client to verify that your user setup works.

1. Double-click the *PDAServer* desktop shortcut created during the *PDA Server* installation:



This will open the *PDA Server Administrator* dialog:



2. In the lower half of the *PDA Server Administrator* dialog, verify that the *Test enabled* check box is selected, then click the link below the check box to open the test interface in a browser:

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



3. Log in to the test interface by typing the user name and password as set up in XProtect Enterprise, then click the *Login* button. The test interface will now log in to XProtect Enterprise, and list all cameras to which the user has access.
4. Click one of the camera links in the test interface's left frame. If an image (the latest recorded image from the selected camera) is displayed, the PDA Server is installed correctly.



## ***PDA Server Installation Troubleshooting***

The following issues may occasionally occur during or upon installation of the PDA Server. For each issue, one or more solutions are available.

### **PDA Server Cannot Be Installed**

- Make sure that IIS is installed
- Make sure that IIS is set up to use the correct port (default is port 8080), and that the same port number was used when the virtual directory was specified
- Make sure that IIS is running

### **Test Interface Cannot Be Displayed**

- Make sure that the .NET Framework is registered on the IIS
- Make sure that IIS is running

### **Test Interface Is Displayed, but It Is Not Possible to Log In**

- Start the *PDA Server Administrator* from the desktop shortcut, and verify that the IP address or hostname in the *Host/IP* field points to XProtect Enterprise. Also make sure that the port number in the *Port* field matches the port number on which XProtect Enterprise's Image Server service is running.
- Make sure that XProtect Enterprise's Image Server service is running.
- Make sure that the user account used when accessing the test interface has been correctly set up in XProtect Enterprise, and that the user account provides access to the required cameras.

## **Install and Configure PDA Client**

The PDA Client is installed on the PDA itself by using a PC with the *Microsoft ActiveSync* synchronization program: First you install the PDA Client on the PC, then you use *ActiveSync* to transfer the PDA Client from the PC to the PDA.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



Before using the following procedure, connect the PDA to the PC, install the *ActiveSync* program on the PC, and set up synchronization with the PDA.

**Tip:** If *ActiveSync* is not installed on the PC, you can download the latest version from <http://www.microsoft.com/downloads/>.

1. On the PC, insert the XProtect Enterprise software DVD, wait for a short while, select required language, then click the *Install Milestone XProtect PDA Client* link. Alternatively, if you are installing a version downloaded from the internet, run the PDA Client installation file *PDAClientInstaller\_[required language].exe* from the location you have saved it to.

Depending on your security settings, you may receive one or more security warnings (*Do you want to run or save this file?*, *Do you want to run this software?*). When this is the case, click the *Run* button.

2. Read and accept the license agreement.
3. Select the folder in which to install the PDA Client software on the PC.
4. Click *Next* twice to begin the installation process.
5. When installation is complete, click the *Close* button. After installing the PDA Client on the PC, the *ActiveSync* program will display the *Add/Remove Programs* dialog, which lets you transfer and install the PDA Client on the PDA.
6. Click *Yes* to install the PDA Client in the default location on the PDA.



## Check the Wireless Connection

Before using the PDA Client, verify that the wireless connection to the PDA is configured and working correctly. You can quickly check the wireless connection by pinging the IP address of the PDA from a command prompt on the server on which the PDA Server is installed.

**What is ping?** Pinging is a quick way of determining whether an IP address is available; you simply send a small amount of data to the required IP address in order to see if it responds. The word *ping*, it is said, was chosen because it mirrors the sound of a sonar.

**How do I ping?** To ping an IP address, do the following: In Windows' *Start* menu, select *Run....* In the *Open* field, type *cmd* and click *OK*. This will open a command prompt window. Now type *ping* followed by the required IP address (example: *ping 123.123.123.123*), then press *ENTER* on your keyboard. If the pinged IP address is available, you will see a reply message and some simple statistics (see example illustration 1); if the IP address does not respond, you will typically see a *Request timed out* message (see example illustration 2).

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



```
C:\WINDOWS\system32\cmd.exe

C:\>ping 10.10.69.4

Pinging 10.10.69.4 with 32 bytes of data:
Reply from 10.10.69.4: bytes=32 time<1ms TTL=64
Reply from 10.10.69.4: bytes=32 time<1ms TTL=64
Reply from 10.10.69.4: bytes=32 time<1ms TTL=64
Reply from 10.10.69.4: bytes=32 time<1ms TTL=64

Ping statistics for 10.10.69.4:
    Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 4, Lost = 0 (0% loss),
    Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds:
        Minimum = 0ms, Maximum = 0ms, Average = 0ms

C:\>
```

Example 1: Successful ping; pinged IP address replies

```
C:\WINDOWS\system32\cmd.exe

C:\>ping 10.10.69.100

Pinging 10.10.69.100 with 32 bytes of data:
Request timed out.
Request timed out.
Request timed out.
Request timed out.

Ping statistics for 10.10.69.100:
    Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 0, Lost = 4 (100% loss),

C:\>
```

Example 2: Unsuccessful ping; ping request times out

**Start and Prepare the PDA Client**

You start the PDA Client by tapping your PDA's *Start* button, selecting *Programs*, then tapping the PDA Client icon.

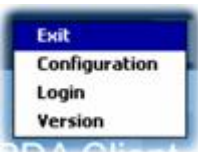
When started for the first time, the PDA Client must be configured before it is able to connect to the PDA Server. During configuration you will be asked to specify the PDA Server's IP address, port number and virtual directory.

Consult your surveillance system administrator if in doubt.

- 1. Tap anywhere on your PDA Client's opening page.



- 2. Hold down the pointer pen until the a menu is shown:



- 3. In the menu, select *Configuration*. This will open the PDA Client's configuration page.



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



4. In the configuration page's *Host / IP* field, specify the IP address of the XProtect Enterprise server on which the PDA Server is running. In the example in step 3, the IP address of the server is 192.168.128.10.
5. In the *Port* field, specify the port on which the PDA Server is running. Default is 8080.
6. In the *Application* field, specify the virtual directory in which the PDA Server is installed (on the IIS). Default is *PDAServer/*.
7. Tap *OK* to store the configuration.

You are now ready to use your PDA Client; see the PDA Client User's Manual, available on the XProtect Enterprise software DVD as well as from [www.milestonesys.com](http://www.milestonesys.com), for more information.

## Download Manager

The Download Manager lets you manage which XProtect Enterprise-related features your organization's users will be able to access from a targeted welcome page on the surveillance system server.

You access the Download Manager from Windows' *Start* menu: Select *All Programs > Milestone XProtect Download Manager > Download Manager*.

Examples of user-accessible features:

- **The Smart Client.** With a regular Internet Explorer browser, users connect to the surveillance server where they are presented with a welcome page. From the welcome page, users download the Smart Client software and install it on their computers.
- **Language packs,** which let users add additional language versions to their existing Smart Clients. Users download such language packs from the welcome page.
- **The Remote Client.** Users connect to welcome page and log in to the Remote Client, which runs in a browser without any need for software installation.
- **Various plugins.** Downloading such plugins can be relevant for users if your organization uses add-on products with the XProtect Enterprise solution.

The welcome page is a simple web page with links to downloading or running various features. It is available in a number of languages; users select their required language from a menu in the top right corner of the welcome page. To view the welcome page, simply open an Internet Explorer browser (version 6.0 or later) and connect to the following address:

```
http://[surveillance server IP address or hostname]
```

If the Image Server service has been configured with a port number other than the default port 80 (you configure this as part of the Server Access properties (see page 130)), users must specify the port number as well, separated from the IP address or hostname by a colon:

```
http://[surveillance server IP address or hostname]:[port number]
```

The content of the welcome page is managed through the Download Manager; therefore the welcome page will often look different in different organizations.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.

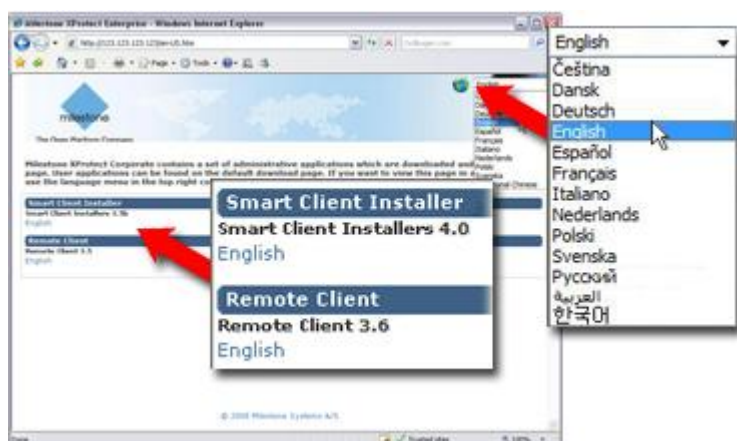


Immediately after you install XProtect Enterprise, the welcome page will provide access to two features: A Smart Client and a Remote Client in language versions matching the language version of your XProtect Enterprise system. Examples:

- If you have installed an English-language version of the XProtect Enterprise software, the two access clients will initially be in English.
- If you have installed a Japanese-language version of XProtect Enterprise, the two access clients will initially be in Japanese.

This initial look of the welcome page is automatically provided through the Download Manager's default configuration—for more information, see Default Configuration in the following.

This example shows the welcome page as it looks immediately after installation of an English-language version of XProtect Enterprise:



Welcome page from English-language version of XProtect Enterprise by default provides access to English-language versions of the Smart Client and Remote Client.

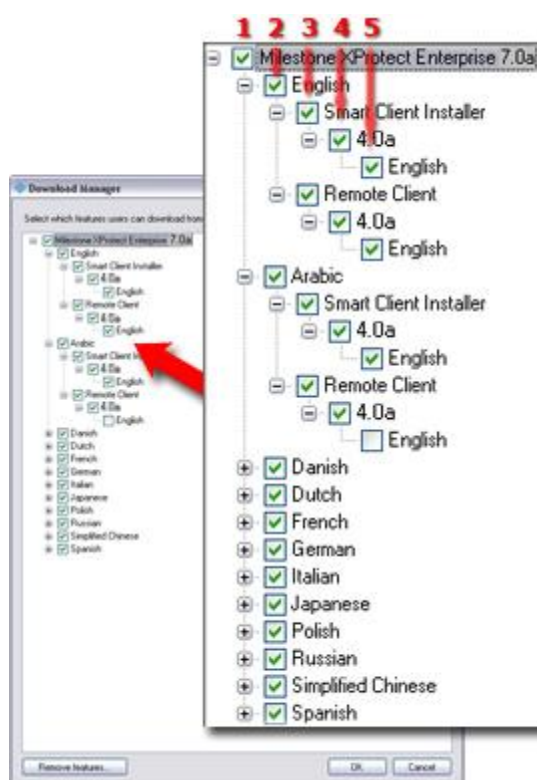
## Default Configuration

The Download Manager has a default configuration. This ensures that your organization's users can access standard features without the surveillance system administrator having to set up anything.

The default configuration provides users with access to two features: A Smart Client and a Remote Client in language versions matching the language version of your XProtect Enterprise system.

The Download Manager's configuration is represented in a tree structure. Example: With an English version of XProtect Enterprise, the Download Manager's default configuration would be represented in a tree structure like this:

- The **first level of the tree structure** (1 in the example illustration) simply indicates





This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



that you are working with a XProtect Enterprise system.

- The **second level (2)** refers to the languages in which the welcome page is available. In the example, the welcome page is available in a dozen languages (English, Arabic, Danish, Dutch, French, etc.).
- The **third level (3)** refers to the features which are—or can be made—available to users. In the example, these features are limited to the Smart Client and the Remote Client.
- The **fourth level (4)** refers to particular versions of each feature, such as version 4.0, which are—or can be made—available to users.
- The **fifth level (5)** refers to the language versions of the features which are—or can be made—available to users. In the example, only English versions are initially listed. This is because the example is from an English version of XProtect Enterprise; had you installed a Japanese version, only Japanese versions would initially be listed.

In the example, XProtect Enterprise has been installed an English-language version. If we expand one of the other languages in the tree structure's second level, for example Arabic, we will see that users who select the Arabic version of the welcome page will initially also only have access to English versions of the Smart Client and, potentially, the Remote Client.

The fact that only standard features are initially available—and only in the same language version as the surveillance system itself—helps reduce installation time and save space on the server. There is simply no need to have a feature or language version available on the server if nobody is going to use it.

You can, however, easily make more features and/or languages available as required. See the following for more information.

## Make New Features Available to Users

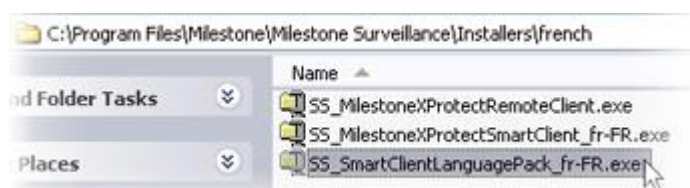
Making new features—including new language versions—available to your organization's users involves two procedures: First you install the required features on the surveillance system server. You then use the Download Manager to fine-tune which features should be available in the various language versions of the welcome page.

### Install New Features on Server

If the Download Manager is open, close it before installing new features on the server.

Installation files for Smart Client language versions, language packs, etc. are by default available on your surveillance system server in a folder called *Installers*. The *Installers* folder is located in the XProtect Enterprise installation folder, typically at C:\Program Files\Milestone\Milestone Surveillance\Installers.

To install a feature from the *Installers* folder, select the required language sub-folder, then double-click the required installation (.exe) file. In the following example, we are about to install a French Smart Client language pack on the surveillance system server:





This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



**Tip:** You can find more language versions of the Smart Client installer—and additional language packs—on the XProtect Enterprise software DVD as well as on [www.milestonesys.com](http://www.milestonesys.com).

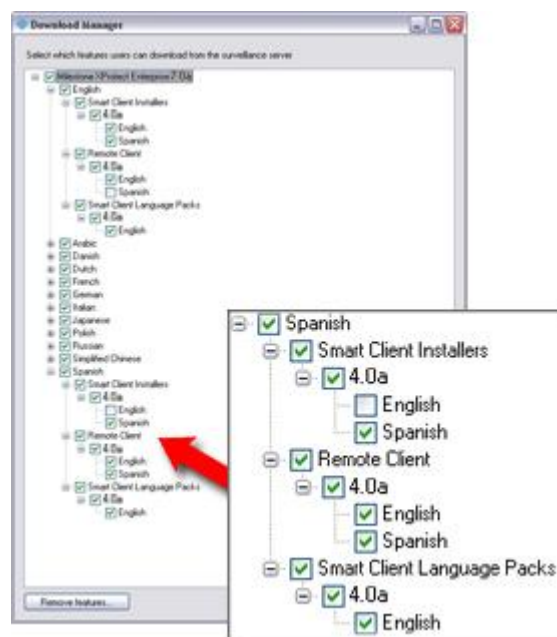
When a new feature has been installed on the surveillance system server, you will see a confirmation dialog. If required, you can open the Download Manager from the dialog.

## Make New Features Available through the Download Manager

When you have installed new features—such as Smart Client language versions, language packs, etc.—they will by default be selected in the Download Manager, and thus immediately be available to users via the welcome page. You can always show or hide features on the welcome page by selecting or clearing check boxes in the Download Manager's tree structure.

In the following example, we have specified that users who select the Spanish-language version of the welcome page should have access to a Spanish version of the Smart Client, English and Spanish versions of the Remote Client, and a French language pack for the Smart Client:

**Tip:** You can change the sequence in which features and languages are displayed on the welcome page: In the Download manager's tree structure, simply drag items and drop them at the required position.

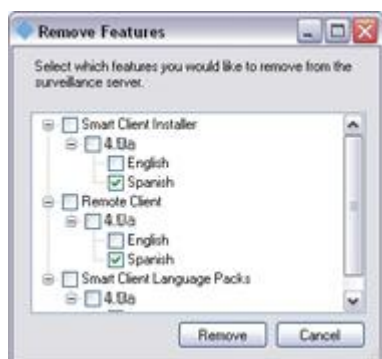


## Hide or Remove Features

You can remove features in several ways:

- You can **hide features** from the welcome page by clearing check boxes in the Download Manager's tree structure. In that case, the features will still be installed on the surveillance system server, and by selecting check boxes in the Download Manager's tree structure you can quickly make the features available again.
- You can **remove features** which have previously been made available through the Download Manager. This will remove the installation of the features on the surveillance system server. The features will disappear from the Download Manager, but installation files for the features will be kept in the surveillance system server's *Installers* folder, so you can re-install them later if required.
  1. In the Download Manager, click the *Remove features...* button.
  2. In the *Remove Features* window, select the features you want to remove. In the following example, we have selected to remove a Spanish Smart Client installer and a Spanish Remote Client.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



3. Click **OK**. You will be asked to confirm that you want to remove the selected features. If you are sure, click the **Yes** button.

- You can **remove installation files for non-required features** from the surveillance system server. This can help you save disk space on the server if you know that your organization is not going to use certain features—typically non-relevant language versions. See *Remove Installation Files for End-User Features* on page 183 for more information.

## Virus Scanning

If you are using virus scanning software on the XProtect Enterprise server, it is likely that the virus scanning will use a considerable amount of system resources on scanning data from the Download Manager. If allowed in your organization, disable virus scanning on all or parts of the XProtect Enterprise server. Read more about virus scanning on page 20.

## Recording Server Manager

The Recording Server service is a vital part of the surveillance system; video streams are only transferred to XProtect Enterprise while the Recording Server service is running. The Recording Server Manager informs you about the state of the Recording Server service. It also lets you manage the service.



In the notification area (a.k.a. system tray), the Recording Server Manager's icon indicates whether the Recording Server service is running or not. Green indicates running (default), red indicates not running.

Right-click the icon to start and stop the Recording Server service, open the Management Application, monitor system status, view log files, and view version information. The Recording Server Manager's features are very simple and self-explanatory. Only the ability to monitor system status deserves a special mention:

By right-clicking the notification area's Recording Server icon and then selecting *Show System Status*, you get access to the *Status* window. Alternatively, simply double-click the icon to open the *Status* window. The *Status* window lets you view the status of the image server(s) and connected cameras. The status of each server/camera is indicated by a color:

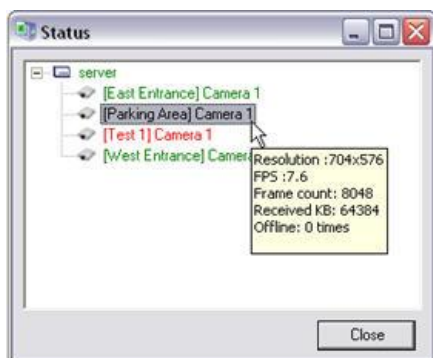
- **Green** indicates that the server or camera is running correctly.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



- **Gray** indicates that the *camera* (not the server) is not running. Typically, a camera will be indicated in gray in the following situations:
  - the camera is not online (as defined in the camera's online period schedule; see page 105).
  - the Recording Server service has been stopped.
- **Red** indicates that the server or camera is not running. This may be because it has been unplugged or due to a network or hardware error. Errors are listed in the Recording Server log file.

Place your mouse pointer over a camera in the status window to view details about the camera in question. The information updates approximately every 10 seconds.



- **Resolution:** The resolution of the camera.
- **FPS:** The number of frames per second (a.k.a. frame rate) currently used by the camera. The number updates each time the camera has received 50 frames.
- **Frame count:** The number of frames received from the camera since the Recording Server service was last started.
- **Received KB:** The number of kilobytes sent the by camera since the Recording Server service was last started.
- **Offline:** Indicates the number of times the camera has been offline due to an error.

## Matrix Monitor

The Matrix Monitor is one of two applications which can be used for viewing Matrix-triggered video from the surveillance system (see page 144). The other option is the Smart Client.

**Where can I find more information about the Matrix Monitor?** Refer to the Matrix Monitor User's Manual, available on the XProtect Enterprise software DVD as well as from [www.milestonesys.com](http://www.milestonesys.com).

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## Viewer

The Viewer is a standalone application which lets you browse and play back video recordings. The Viewer also lets you print still images, send still images via e-mail, and export entire video and audio sequences in a variety of formats. The Viewer can be accessed in two ways:

- **By administrators working on the surveillance system server:** On the surveillance system server, the Viewer is automatically installed as part of the XProtect Enterprise installation. You access the Viewer from Windows' *Start* menu: Select *Start > All Programs > Milestone XProtect Enterprise > Viewer*.
- **By people who have received video evidence from your surveillance system:** This type of users are typically police officers, investigators, or similar. When Smart Client operators export video evidence, they can include the Viewer with the exported evidence. This is a great advantage for the recipient of the exported evidence, since no installation is required in order to use the Viewer for browsing exported evidence.



The Viewer: In this example, the Viewer displays video from a single camera; the Viewer can display video from several cameras simultaneously.

**Where can I find more information about the Viewer?** The Viewer has its own built-in help system. Alternatively, refer to the Viewer User's Manual, available on the XProtect Enterprise software DVD as well as from [www.milestonesys.com](http://www.milestonesys.com).

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## Removal

---

### ***Remove the Entire Surveillance System***

To remove the entire XProtect Enterprise surveillance system (that is the surveillance server software and related installation files, the video device drivers, the Download Manager, the Viewer and the Smart Client) from your server, do the following:

**What happens to recordings?** Your recordings will not be removed; they will remain on the server even after the server software has been removed. Likewise, the XProtect Enterprise configuration file will remain on the server; this allows you to reuse your configuration if you later install XProtect Enterprise again.

1. Shut down all XProtect Enterprise components.
2. In Windows' *Start* menu, select *Control Panel*, and select *Add or Remove Programs*.
3. In the *Add or Remove Programs* window's list of currently installed programs, select the *Milestone XProtect Enterprise **system*** entry (not the *Milestone XProtect Enterprise* entry) and click the *Change/Remove* button.
4. The setup wizard appears; click the *Next* button, then the *Remove* button.
5. Select *Remove entire surveillance system*, then click *Next*, and complete the wizard's remaining steps.

If you have used the PDA Client/PDA Server solution, the PDA Server software must be removed separately.

### ***Remove Individual Components***

#### **Remove the Surveillance Server Software**

To remove the XProtect Enterprise server software (including the Viewer, but no other surveillance system components, such as the Download Manager or the Smart Client), do the following:

**What happens to recordings?** Your recordings will not be removed; they will remain on the server even after the server software has been removed. Likewise, the XProtect Enterprise configuration file will remain on the server; this allows you to reuse your configuration if you later install XProtect Enterprise again.

1. Shut down all XProtect Enterprise components.
2. In Windows' *Start* menu, select *Control Panel*, and select *Add or Remove Programs*.
3. In the *Add or Remove Programs* window's list of currently installed programs, select the *Milestone XProtect Enterprise* entry (not the *Milestone XProtect Enterprise **system*** entry) and click the *Remove* button.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



4. You will be asked to confirm that you want to remove XProtect Enterprise. If you are sure that you want to remove the software, click *OK*. If a *Status Information* window appears on your screen during installation, simply click its *OK* button (the window simply provides a summary of what has been removed).
5. Click *Finish*.

## Remove the Download Manager

To remove the Download Manager (see page 175) separately from the other XProtect Enterprise surveillance server software:

1. In Windows' *Start* menu, select *Control Panel*, and select *Add or Remove Programs*.
2. In the *Add or Remove Programs* window's list of currently installed programs, select *Milestone XProtect Download Manager*.
3. Click the *Remove* button.

## Remove Installation Files for End-User Features

When you have installed XProtect Enterprise, your surveillance system server by default contains installation files for a number of end-user features. The installation files lets you install the end-user features on the surveillance system server, and make them available to your organization's users through the Download Manager (see page 175).

You can remove installation files for non-required features from the surveillance system server. This can help you save disk space on the server if you know that your organization is not going to use certain features, for example non-relevant language versions:

1. Open the *Installers* folder located in the XProtect Enterprise installation folder, typically at *C:\Program Files\Milestone\Milestone Surveillance\Installers*.
2. Select the required language sub-folder, then delete the unwanted installation (.exe) files. In the example to the right, we have selected a French Smart Client language pack installation file for deletion from the surveillance system server.



## Remove the Viewer

You cannot remove the Viewer separately; the Viewer is removed as part of the surveillance server software removal.

## Remove the Smart Client

To remove a Smart Client, do the following on the computer on which the Smart Client is installed:

1. In Windows' *Start* menu, select *Control Panel*, and select *Add or Remove Programs*.



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



2. In the *Add or Remove Programs* window's list of currently installed programs, select *Milestone XProtect Smart Client x.x* (where x.x refers to the version number).
3. Click the *Remove* button, and follow the removal instructions.

## Remove the PDA Server

1. In Windows' *Start* menu, select *Control Panel*, and select *Add or Remove Programs*.
2. In the *Add or Remove Programs* window's list of currently installed programs, select the PDA Server.
3. Click the *Remove* button, and follow the removal instructions.

## Remove the PDA Client

The PDA Client may be removed in two ways:

### ***Removal Directly from PDA***

1. Tap the PDA's *Start* button.
2. Select *Settings*.
3. Select the *System* tab.
4. Select *Remove Programs*.
5. Select the PDA Client, and tap the *Remove* button.
6. Select *Yes* when asked if you want to remove the program.

### ***Removal from a PC with ActiveSync***

This method requires that the PDA Client was installed on the PC and transferred to the PDA through ActiveSync.

1. Connect the PDA to the PC on which ActiveSync and the PDA Client software is installed.
2. Use Windows' *Add or Remove Programs* feature to remove the PDA Client software.
3. When removing the PDA Client software from the PC this way, ActiveSync will give you the option of removing the PDA Client software from the PDA as well (provided the PDA is connected). Click the *Remove...* button to remove the PDA Client software from the PDA as well.



## Remove Video Device Drivers

Video device drivers are small programs used for controlling/communicating with the camera devices connected to an XProtect Enterprise system. To remove the video device drivers, do the following:



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



1. Open Windows' *Control Panel*, and select *Add or Remove Programs*.
2. In the *Add or Remove Programs* window, select the *Video Device Pack Vx.x* entry (where x.x indicates the version number), and click the *Remove* button.
3. You will be asked to confirm that you want to remove the video device drivers. If you are sure, click *OK*.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## Built-in Help System

---

To use XProtect Enterprise's built-in help system, simply click the *Help* button in the Management Application's toolbar. Alternatively, press the F1 key on your keyboard while using XProtect Enterprise. The help system opens in a separate window, allowing you to easily switch between help and XProtect Enterprise itself. The help system is context-sensitive. This means that when you press F1 for help while working in a particular XProtect Enterprise dialog, the help system automatically displays help matching that dialog.

### Navigating the Built-in Help System

To navigate between the help system's contents, simply use the help window's tabs: *Contents*, *Search*, *Favorites* and *Glossary*, or use the links inside the help topics.



- **Contents Tab:** Navigate the help system based on a tree structure. Many users will be familiar with this type of navigation from, for example, Windows Explorer.
- **Search Tab:** Search for help topics containing particular terms of interest. For example, you can search for the term *zoom* and every help topic containing the term *zoom* will be listed in the search results. Double-clicking a help topic title in the search results list will open the required topic.
- **Favorites Tab:** Build a list of your favorite help topics. Whenever you find a help topic of particular interest to you, simply add the topic to your favorites list. You can then access the topic with a single click—also if you close the help window and return to it later.
- **Glossary Tab:** Provides definitions of common surveillance and network-related terms. Simply select a term to view a corresponding definition in the small window below the list of terms.

Help topics contain various types of links, notably so-called expanding drop-down links. Clicking such a link will display detailed information immediately below the link itself; the content on the topic simply expands. Expanding drop-down links thus help save space.

**Tip:** To quickly hide all texts from expanding drop-down links in a help topic, simply click the title of the topic on the help system's *Contents* tab.

### Printing Help Topics

To print a help topic, navigate to the required topic and click the help window's *Print* button. A dialog box may ask you whether you wish to print the selected topic only or all topics under the selected heading; when this is the case, select *Print the selected topic* and click *OK*.

**Tip:** When printing a help topic, it will be printed as you see it on your screen. Therefore, if a topic contains expanding drop-down links, click each required drop-down link to display the text in order for it to be included when you print. This allows you to create targeted printouts, containing exactly the amount of information you require.

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



# Index

---

<b>—3—</b>	
3 GB Switching .....	157
<b>—A—</b>	
Active Directory .....	52, 134
ActiveSync .....	172
Add Hardware Devices Wizard, Advanced Method .....	34
Add Hardware Devices Wizard, Express Method .....	31
Add Hardware Devices Wizard, Import from CSV File Method .....	39
Add Hardware Devices Wizard, Manual Method .....	37
Adjust Motion Detection Wizard .....	49
Administrator .....	133
Advanced Method, Add Hardware Devices Wizard .....	34
Alert and Generic Event Port .....	115
Apply/Save Configuration Changes .....	28
Archiving .....	92
Archiving Path for New Cameras, Default .....	148
Archiving, Scheduling of .....	104
Audio .....	77, 100
Audio Recording, Camera Properties .....	72
Audio Selection, Camera Properties .....	72
Audit Log .....	139, 141
<b>—B—</b>	
Backup, Archived Recordings .....	95
Backup, Surveillance System Configuration .....	22, 150, 155
Basic User .....	52, 133
Buffer, Pre-/Post-recording .....	67, 78
<b>—C—</b>	
Cameras .....	63
Cameras, Add .....	30
Cameras, Replace .....	53
Central .....	143
Client Access to Surveillance System .....	130
Clients .....	163
Clone .....	150
Comma-separated Values .....	39, 151
Configuration Path .....	148

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



Configure User Access Wizard.....	51
Configure Video and Recording Wizard.....	43
Corrupt Database, Repair.....	79
CPU, Minimum Requirements.....	16
CSV File.....	39, 151
<b>—D—</b>	
Database Resizing.....	91
Database, Inherit/Delete/Leave Existing .....	55
Database, Protect from Corruption .....	160
Database, Repair Corrupt.....	79
Daylight Saving Time .....	157
Default Archiving Path for New Cameras .....	148
Default File Paths.....	148
Default Microphone and Speaker.....	72, 77
Default Recording Path for New Cameras .....	148
Device Discovery .....	31
Device Drivers.....	162
Device License Key.....	57
Device Pack.....	162
Differences in XProtect Go.....	2
Digital Video Recorder .....	60
DirectX .....	16
DLK.....	57
Download Manager.....	175
Driver IDs .....	194
Drivers .....	162
DST.....	157
DVR .....	60
Dynamic Archiving .....	93, 98
Dynamic Path Selection, Camera Properties .....	65
<b>—E—</b>	
E-mail Notification, Scheduling Property for Cameras .....	107
E-mail Notifications .....	107, 110
Event Log .....	139, 140
Event Notification, Camera Properties.....	80
Events.....	114
Events, Configure Ports and Polling Interval for .....	115
Export/Import Surveillance System Configuration .....	150
Express Method, Add Hardware Devices Wizard .....	31

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## —F—

Fisheye.....	60, 83
Fisheye, Camera Properties.....	83
Fisheye, Hardware Device Properties.....	60
Frame Rate – MJPEG, Camera Properties.....	68
Frame Rate – MPEG, Camera Properties.....	70
Frame Rate, Camera Properties.....	75
FTP Event Port.....	115

## —G—

Generic Events.....	114, 119
Getting Started.....	25
Getting Started with XProtect Go.....	2
Graphics Adapter, Minimum Requirements.....	16
Group, User.....	135

## —H—

Hard Disk, Minimum Requirements.....	16
Hardware Device Drivers.....	162
Hardware Devices.....	58
Hardware Devices, Add.....	30
Hardware Devices, Replace.....	53
Hardware Driver IDs.....	194
Hardware Input.....	114
Hardware Input Events.....	114, 116
Hardware Output.....	114, 124
Hardware Output on Event.....	125
Help System, Built-in.....	186

## —I—

IIS.....	16
Image Import Service.....	127
Image Import Service Log.....	139, 140
Image Server Service.....	127
Image Server Service Log.....	139, 140
Import Changes to Surveillance System Configuration.....	151
Import DLKs.....	57
Import from CSV File Method, Add Hardware Devices Wizard.....	39
Import/Export Surveillance System Configuration.....	150
Inherit/Delete/Leave Existing Database.....	55
Input.....	114
Installation.....	21
Installation, Upgrade from Previous Version.....	22

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



Integrity Checks, Log .....	141
Internet Information Services .....	16
<b>—K—</b>	
Keyframe Only, MPEG Recording .....	71, 76
<b>—L—</b>	
Language Support & XML, Properties for Client Access to Surveillance System .....	131
Licenses .....	57
Limitations in XProtect Go .....	2
Live Video, View in Management Application .....	90
Local IP Ranges .....	131
Log Check Service .....	127
Logging .....	139
<b>—M—</b>	
Management Application .....	28
Management Application Behavior, Change/Reset .....	29
Management Application Log .....	139, 140
Management Application, View Live Video in .....	90
Manual Events .....	114, 117
Manual Method, Add Hardware Devices Wizard .....	37
Manual Recording, Camera Properties .....	68
Master and Slave Servers .....	128
Matrix .....	144
Matrix Monitor .....	18, 180
Microphone, Default .....	72, 77
Microphones, Configuration .....	100
MJPEG .....	68, 75, 106
Motion Detection .....	49, 81
Motion Detection & Exclude Regions, Camera Properties .....	81
MPEG .....	70, 76
<b>—N—</b>	
Name & Video Channels, Hardware Device Properties .....	58
Network, Device Type & License, Hardware Device Properties .....	59
Network, Minimum Requirements .....	16
<b>—O—</b>	
Online Period, Scheduling Property for Cameras .....	105
Operating System, Minimum Requirements .....	16
Output .....	114, 124
Output Control on Event .....	125
Output, Camera Properties .....	80
<b>—P—</b>	
Password Protection, Management Application .....	28

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



Paths, Default.....	148
Patrolling, PTZ.....	86, 108
PDA Client.....	18, 163, 172
PDA Server .....	17, 168
Plug-in Information .....	148
Polling Interval .....	115
Port Numbers, Important .....	19
Post-alarm Images.....	127
Post-recording .....	67, 78
Pre-alarm Images .....	127, 139
Pre-recording .....	67, 78
Preset Positions, PTZ .....	84
PTZ .....	59, 84, 86, 108
PTZ Device, Hardware Device Properties .....	59
PTZ on Event, Camera Properties .....	89
PTZ Patrolling, Camera Properties .....	86
PTZ Patrolling, Scheduling Property for Cameras.....	108
PTZ Preset Positions, Camera Properties .....	84
PTZ Scanning .....	88
PTZ Type .....	84
<b>—R—</b>	
RAM, Minimum Requirements .....	16
Recording & Archiving Paths, Camera Properties .....	63, 78
Recording Path for New Cameras, Default .....	148
Recording Server Manager .....	179
Recording Server Service .....	127
Recording Server Service Log .....	139, 140
Recording Settings, Camera Properties .....	77
Recordings .....	63
Remote Client.....	17, 163, 167
Removal .....	182
Replace Hardware Device Wizard .....	53
Reset/Change Management Application Behavior .....	29
Restart Services.....	127
Restore Points .....	149
Retention Time .....	79
Rights, User .....	136
Running Out of Disk Space.....	95



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## —S—

Save/Apply Configuration Changes .....	28
Scheduling .....	102
Server Access .....	130
Services .....	127
Slave Servers .....	128
SLC .....	57
Smart Client .....	16, 163, 165
SMS Notification, Scheduling Property for Cameras .....	108
SMS Notifications .....	112
SMTP Event Port .....	115
SMTP Server .....	111
Software License Code .....	57
Software, Minimum Requirements .....	16
Space, Monitor Use of .....	91
Speaker, Default .....	72, 77
Speakers, Configuration .....	101
Speedup .....	69, 75, 106
Speedup, Scheduling Property for MJPEG Cameras .....	106
SSL .....	111
Start Services .....	127
Static Archiving .....	98
Stop Services .....	127
Storage Information, Camera Properties .....	73
Storage Space, Monitor Use of .....	91
Summer Time .....	157
System Requirements, Minimum .....	16

## —T—

TCP Data Package, Event Triggered by .....	119
Time Server .....	20
Timer Events .....	114, 123
TLS .....	111

## —U—

UDP Data Package, Event Triggered by .....	119
Uninstallation .....	182
Upgrade from Previous Version .....	22
UPS .....	160
User Rights .....	136
Users .....	51, 133
Users, Groups of .....	135

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## —V—

Version Information .....	148
Video Device Drivers .....	162
Video Encoder .....	30, 58, 59
Video Recording, Camera Properties .....	66
Video, Camera Properties.....	76
Video, View Live in Management Application.....	90
Viewer.....	181
Viewer Export Log .....	139
Virus Scanning .....	20
VMD .....	49, 81

## —W—

Windows User.....	52, 134
Wizards .....	30

## —X—

XProtect Central .....	143
XProtect Go, Getting Started with .....	2
XProtect Go, Limitations in .....	2

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



## Appendix: Hardware Driver IDs

---

If using the Add Hardware Devices Wizard's Import from CSV File option (see page 39), you must—if cameras and server are offline—specify a *HardwareDriverID* for each hardware device you want to add. In the following, IDs for all hardware devices supported at the time of release of this version of XProtect Enterprise are listed.

The list is sorted alphabetically by device, with the corresponding ID at the end of each line. Example: *ACTi ACD-2100 105* indicates that you should use *105* as the ID if adding an ACTi ACD-2100 hardware device.

This list is for guidance only; IDs are subject to change without notice. More devices may be supported by the time you read this, as new versions of video device drivers—so-called Device Packs—are released at regular intervals. To view a current list of IDs, view the release notes for the Device Pack used in your organization. Alternatively visit [www.milestonesys.com](http://www.milestonesys.com) for the latest information.

360 Vision IP Dome 320  
ACTi ACD-2100 105  
ACTi ACD-2200 173  
ACTi ACD-2300 152  
ACTi ACD-2400 228  
ACTi ACM-1011 105  
ACTi ACM-1100 series 105  
ACTi ACM-1230 series 105  
ACTi ACM-1310 series 105  
ACTi ACM-1430 series 105  
ACTi ACM-1511 105  
ACTi ACM-3001 105  
ACTi ACM-3011 105  
ACTi ACM-3100 series 105  
ACTi ACM-3210 series 105  
ACTi ACM-3300 series 105  
ACTi ACM-3400 series 105  
ACTi ACM-3511 105  
ACTi ACM-3701 105  
ACTi ACM-4000 series 105  
ACTi ACM-4100 series 105  
ACTi ACM-4200 series 105  
ACTi ACM-5001 105  
ACTi ACM-5600 series 105  
ACTi ACM-5711 105  
ACTi ACM-7400 series 105  
ACTi ACM-7511 105  
ACTi ACM-8100 series 105  
ACTi ACM-8200 series 105  
ACTi CAM-5100H 105  
ACTi CAM-5100M 105  
ACTi CAM-5100S 105  
ACTi CAM-5120 105  
ACTi CAM-5130 105  
ACTi CAM-5140 105  
ACTi CAM-5150 105  
ACTi CAM-5200 series 105  
ACTi CAM-5220 series 105

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



ACTi CAM-5300 series 105  
ACTi CAM-5320 series 105  
ACTi CAM-5500 105  
ACTi CAM-5520 105  
ACTi CAM-6100 105  
ACTi CAM-6110 105  
ACTi CAM-6120 105  
ACTi CAM-6200 105  
ACTi CAM-6210 105  
ACTi CAM-6220 105  
ACTi CAM-6230 105  
ACTi CAM-6500 105  
ACTi CAM-6510 105  
ACTi CAM-6520 105  
ACTi CAM-6600 105  
ACTi CAM-6610 105  
ACTi CAM-6620 105  
ACTi CAM-6630 105  
ACTi CAM-7100-series 105  
ACTi CAM-7200-series 105  
ACTi CAM-7300-series 105  
ACTi SED-2100R 105  
ACTi SED-2100S 105  
ACTi SED-2120/2120T 105  
ACTi SED-2130 105  
ACTi SED-2140 105  
ACTi SED-2200 105  
ACTi SED-2300Q 117  
ACTi SED-2310Q 117  
ACTi SED-2320Q 117  
ACTi SED-2400 105  
ACTi SED-2410 141  
ACTi SED-2420 141  
ACTi SED-2600 152  
ACTi SED-2610 152  
ACTi TCM-4301 327  
ACTi TCM-5311 334  
Adam 6050 129  
Adam 6060 108  
Adam 6066 108  
AgileMesh 100 145  
American Dynamics VideoEdge Dome 157  
American Dynamics VideoEdge IP Box Camera 157  
APPRO LC-7224 series 156  
APPRO LC-7226 series 157  
Apro Technology H1000 series 255  
Arecont AV1300 140  
Arecont AV1305 140  
Arecont AV1355 140  
Arecont AV2100 140  
Arecont AV2105 140  
Arecont AV2155 140  
Arecont AV3100 140  
Arecont AV3105 140  
Arecont AV3130 140  
Arecont AV3155 140  
Arecont AV5100 140  
Arecont AV5105 140

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



Arecont AV5155 140  
Arecont AV8180 154  
Arecont AV8185 154  
Arecont AV8360 154  
Arecont AV8365 154  
AXIS 200+ 1  
AXIS 205 15  
AXIS 206 19  
AXIS 206M 19  
AXIS 206W 19  
AXIS 207 18  
AXIS 207MW 18  
AXIS 207W 18  
AXIS 209FD 168  
AXIS 209MFD 168  
AXIS 210 18  
AXIS 210A 18  
AXIS 211 18  
AXIS 211A 18  
AXIS 211M 18  
AXIS 211W 18  
AXIS 212 PTZ 138  
AXIS 213 PTZ 22  
AXIS 214 PTZ 123  
AXIS 215 PTZ 123  
AXIS 215 PTZ-E 123  
AXIS 216FD 122  
AXIS 216MFD 122  
AXIS 221 25  
AXIS 223M 153  
AXIS 225FD 25  
AXIS 231D 23  
AXIS 231D+ 23  
AXIS 232D 23  
AXIS 232D+ 23  
AXIS 233D 23  
AXIS 240 2  
AXIS 240Q 16  
AXIS 241Q 16  
AXIS 241QA 16  
AXIS 241S 17  
AXIS 241SA 17  
AXIS 242S IV 17  
AXIS 243Q 160  
AXIS 243SA 17  
AXIS 247S 172  
AXIS 282 130  
AXIS 2100 5  
AXIS 2110 5  
AXIS 2120 6  
AXIS 2130 12  
AXIS 2400 OSYS 3  
AXIS 2400 Linux 8  
AXIS 2400+ 8  
AXIS 2401 OSYS 4  
AXIS 2401 Linux 11  
AXIS 2401+ 11  
AXIS 2411 14

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



AXIS 2420 10  
AXIS 2420 10  
AXIS M1011 283  
AXIS M1031 284  
AXIS M3011 285  
AXIS M3014 342  
AXIS M7001 286  
AXIS P1311 288  
AXIS P3301 246  
AXIS P3343 339  
AXIS P3344 339  
AXIS Q1755 278  
AXIS Q6032 335  
AXIS Q7401 256  
AXIS Q7404 337  
AXIS Q7406 268  
Barix Barionet 272  
Basler BIP-640c 242  
Basler BIP-640c-dn 242  
Basler BIP-1000c 242  
Basler BIP-1000c-dn 242  
Basler BIP-1300c 242  
Basler BIP-1300c-dn 242  
Basler BIP-1600c 242  
Basler BIP-1600c-dn 242  
Baxall X-Stream 91  
Bosch Dinion NWC-0455-10P 133  
Bosch Dinion NWC-0495-10P 133  
Bosch FlexiDome NWD-0455 133  
Bosch FlexiDome NWD-0495 133  
Bosch VideoJet X10 253  
Bosch VideoJet X20 253  
Bosch VideoJet X40 253  
Bosch VIP X1 127  
Bosch VIP X2 132  
Bosch VIP X1600 162  
Bosch VG4 Series 190  
Canon VB-C10 31  
Canon VB-C50FSi 212  
Canon VB-C50i 212  
Canon VB-C50iR 212  
Canon VB-C60 276  
Canon VB-C300 174  
Canon VB-C500 330  
CBC Ganz ZN-D2024 207  
CBC Ganz ZN-PT304L 179  
CBC Ganz ZN-PT304WL 179  
Checkview 9128702 275  
Cisco IPC-2500 322  
Cisco IPC-4300 322  
Cisco IPC-4500 322  
Convision S1 21  
Convision V100 21  
Convision V200 20  
Convision V6xx 7  
Convision V7xx 7  
D-Link DCS1000/1000W 55  
D-Link DCS-2000 101

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



D-Link DCS-2100+/2100/2100G 101  
D-Link DCS-3220/3220G 118  
D-Link DCS-5300 99  
D-Link DCS-5300G 99  
D-Link DCS-6620/6620G 116  
Darim Vision PVE400 298  
Digimerge DNB6320 177  
Digimerge DND7220 177  
Digimerge DNP5220E 177  
Digimerge DNP5320E 177  
Digimerge DNS1010 177  
Digimerge DNZ-9320W 244  
DirectShow camera 214  
Discrete DIV2300 188  
DvTel DVT-7101 262  
DvTel DVT-7608 261  
DvTel DVT-9460 514  
DvTel DVT-9540DW 514  
Dynacolor Diva Standard 296  
Dynacolor Diva Zoom 282  
Dynacolor Diva Mini 297  
Etrovision EV3130 236  
Etrovision EV3131 237  
Etrovision EV3131A 237  
Etrovision EV3830 238  
Etrovision EV6130 239  
Etrovision EV6230 240  
Etrovision EV6530 240  
Extreme CCTV EX7 103  
Extreme CCTV EX30 103  
Extreme CCTV EX36 103  
Extreme CCTV EX80 103  
Extreme CCTV EX82 103  
Extreme CCTV EX85 140  
Extreme CCTV REG-L1-IP 103  
Eyeview CMI-110 245  
Eyeview CMI-H230 245  
Eyeview CMI-H260 245  
Eyeview EYENET-250A 245  
Eyeview GPOWER IP Basement 245  
Eyeview IPM-100 245  
Eyeview IPM-150 245  
Eyeview IPM-300 245  
Eyeview IPM-500 245  
Eyeview IPR-220 245  
Eyeview IPR-330 245  
Eyeview IPR-6000 245  
Eyeview IPR-6600 245  
Eyeview IPS-110 245  
Eyeview IPS-220 245  
Eyeview IPS-300 245  
Eyeview IPS-330 245  
Eyeview IPS-400 245  
Eyeview IPS-500 245  
Eyeview IPS-600 245  
Eyeview IPS-800 245  
Eyeview IPS-830 245  
Eyeview IPS-900 245



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



FLIR 241S 95  
GE Security GEC-IP2B 225  
GE Security GEC-IP2B-C 225  
GE Security GEC-IP2B-P 225  
GE Security GEC-IP2D 225  
GE Security GEC-IP2D-C 225  
GE Security GEC-IP2D-P 225  
GE Security GEC-IP2VD 225  
GE Security GEC-IP2VD-C 225  
GE Security GEC-IP2VD-P 225  
GE Security GEC-IP2VD-DN 225  
GE Security GEC-IP2VD-DNC 225  
GE Security GEC-IP2VD-DNP 225  
Grandeye Halocam IPC 249  
Grandeye Halocam IPW 249  
HikVision DS6101 277  
HikVision DS6104 273  
Hitron HECMC4V4C4 217  
Hitron HEV0104 223  
Hitron HEV0407 224  
Hitron HNCA-811-NZ1 222  
Hitron HNCB-811NZ1 219  
Hitron HNCB-F1SN 218  
Hitron HNCG-F1SAW0S4 220  
Hitron HNCV-811PZ0S4 221  
Hitron HWD-12SMP 187  
Hunt HLC-81I 201  
Hunt HLC-81M 201  
Hunt HLC-83M 202  
Hunt HLC-83V 203  
Hunt HLT-86F 198  
Hunt HLT-87Z 209  
Hunt HLV-1CI 200  
Hunt HLV-1CM 200  
Hunt HVT-01HT 199  
Hunt HWS-01HD 204  
Hunt HWS-04HD/W 205  
ICanServer 510 257  
ICanServer 512 257  
ICanServer 540 259  
ICanView 220 258  
ICanView 222 258  
ICanView 230 258  
ICanView 232 258  
ICanView 240 257  
ICanView 250 257  
ICanView 260 258  
ICanView 270 257  
ICanView 280 258  
ICanView 290 257  
Infinova V1700N-C series  
NetDome 119  
Infinova V1700N-L series NetDome 137  
Intellinet MNC-L10/550710 104  
ioibox series 400  
ioibox series 401  
ioicam series 400  
IPIX IS2000/CVD2000/CVN2000 57

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



IPIX CVD3000 57  
Ipx DDK-1000 157  
Ipx DDK-1500 157  
Ipx DDK-1500D 157  
Ipx VE-3500 157  
IQEye101 83  
IQEye300 series 83  
IQEye 4 series 83  
IQEye501 83  
IQEye510 83  
IQEye 511 83  
IQEye600 series 83  
IQEye700 series 83  
IQEye800 Sentinel series 83  
IQEye Alliance series 83  
Johnson Controls DVN5008 293  
JVC VN-A1U 43  
JVC VN-C10U 44  
JVC VN-C20U 126  
JVC VN-C30U 42  
JVC VN-C3WU 40  
JVC VN-C205 169  
JVC VN-C215 146  
JVC VN-C625U 45  
JVC VN-C655U 45  
JVC VN-E4/-E4E /-E4U 121  
JVC VN-V25 185  
JVC VN-V26 185  
JVC VN-V225 185  
JVC VN-V685 196  
JVC VN-V686/V686B 196  
JVC VN-V686WPC 196  
JVC VN-X35 235  
JVC VN-X235 235  
Lenel ICT-220 345  
Lenel ICT-230 345  
Lenel ICT-250 346  
Lenel ICT-510 345  
Lenel LC-330FDX 345  
Linudix LWS800 511  
Linudix LWS820 512  
Linudix LWS840 511  
Lumenera LE165 84  
Lumenera LE175 84  
Lumenera LE256 84  
Lumenera LE259 84  
Lumenera LE275 84  
Lumenera LE375 84  
Lumenera LE575 84  
Mobotix D10 86  
Mobotix D12 86  
Mobotix D22M 86  
Mobotix M1 86  
Mobotix M10 86  
Mobotix M12 86  
Mobotix M22M 86  
Mobotix Q22 260  
Mobotix Q24 328

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



Optelecom Siquira BC-2x series 281  
Optelecom Siquira C-50 269  
Optelecom Siquira C-54 289  
Optelecom Siquira C-60 321  
Optelecom Siquira FD-2x series 281  
Optelecom Siquira S-50 269  
Optelecom Siquira S-54 289  
Optelecom Siquira S-60 321  
Optelecom Siquira V-30 295  
Panasonic BB-HCE481 series 24  
Panasonic BB-HCM311 series 24  
Panasonic BB-HCM331 series 24  
Panasonic BB-HCM371A 24  
Panasonic BB-HCM381 series 24  
Panasonic BB-HCM403 24  
Panasonic BB-HCM511 180  
Panasonic BB-HCM515 180  
Panasonic BB-HCM527 180  
Panasonic BB-HCM531 180  
Panasonic BB-HCM547 180  
Panasonic BB-HCM580 180  
Panasonic BB-HCM581 180  
Panasonic BB-HCS301 24  
Panasonic BL -C1 series 24  
Panasonic BL-C10 series 24  
Panasonic BL-C20 series 24  
Panasonic BL-C30 series 24  
Panasonic BL-C111 182  
Panasonic BL-C131 182  
Panasonic KX-HCM8 63  
Panasonic KX-HCM10 series 63  
Panasonic KX-HCM110A series 24  
Panasonic KX-HCM230 series 63  
Panasonic KX-HCM250 series 63  
Panasonic KX-HCM270 series 63  
Panasonic KX-HCM280 series (except 280A) 63  
Panasonic KX-HCM280A 24  
Panasonic WJ-NT104 60  
Panasonic WJ-NT304 183  
Panasonic WV- NF284 120  
Panasonic WV-NF302 211  
Panasonic WV-NP240/WV-NP244 120  
Panasonic WV-NP304 211  
Panasonic WV-NP472 61  
Panasonic WV-NP502 351  
Panasonic WV-NP1000/WV-NP1004 120  
Panasonic WV-NS202 143  
Panasonic WV-NS320 series 64  
Panasonic WV-NS950 197  
Panasonic WV-NS954 197  
Panasonic WV-NW470 85  
Panasonic WV-NW484 175  
Panasonic WV-NW502 351  
Panasonic WV-NW960 197  
Panasonic WV-NW964 197  
Pentax Versacam IC-4 50  
Pelco Camclosure IP series 149  
Pelco Endura Net5301T 144

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



Pelco Endura Net5308T 166  
Pelco Endura Net5316T 167  
Pelco IP3701 176  
Pelco NET300 208  
Pelco NET350 208  
Pelco Spectra IV-IP 213  
Pelco SpectraMini IV-IP 213  
Philips NETSVR-1 93  
Philips NETSVR-6 92  
Pixord 120 72  
Pixord 126 75  
Pixord 200 73  
Pixord 201 73  
Pixord 205 77  
Pixord 207 77  
Pixord 24X 74  
Pixord 261 78  
Pixord 1000 75  
Pixord 400/400W 151  
Pixord 461 148  
Pixord 463 148  
Pixord 1401/1401W 136  
Pixord 2000 76  
Pixord 4000 151  
Polar Industries zPan100 501  
Provideo SD-606W 279  
Provideo SD-705VPRO-1 280  
Samsung SCC-C6475 131  
Samsung SHR-2040 165  
Samsung SNC-B2315 227  
Samsung SNC-B5395 248  
Samsung SNC-C6225 325  
Samsung SNC-C7225 325  
Samsung SNC-C7478 299  
Samsung SNC-M300 226  
Samsung SNT-1010 147  
Samsung Techwin SNC550 191  
Samsung Techwin SNC570 291  
Samsung Techwin SND460V 329  
Samsung Techwin SND560 292  
Samsung Techwin SNP1000/SNP1000A 195  
Samsung Techwin SNP3300/SNP3300A 194  
Samsung Techwin SNS100 192  
Samsung Techwin SNS400 193  
Sanyo VCC-400N 206  
Sanyo VCC-9500 206  
Sanyo VCC-9500P 206  
Sanyo VCC-9600 206  
Sanyo VCC-9600P 206  
Sanyo VCC-9700 206  
Sanyo VCC-9700P 206  
Sanyo VCC-9800 206  
Sanyo VCC-9800P 206  
Sanyo VCC-HD4000 206  
Sanyo VCC-HD4000P 206  
Sanyo VCC-HDN1(S) 206  
Sanyo VCC-N6584 206  
Sanyo VCC-N6695P 206

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



Sanyo VCC-WB2000/VCC-WB4000 56

Sanyo VCC-P450 206

Sanyo VCC-P450NA 206

Sanyo VCC-P470 206

Sanyo VCC-P470NA 206

Sanyo VCC-P7574 142

Sanyo VCC-P7575P 142

Sanyo VCC-P9574 142

Sanyo VCC-P9574N 142

Sanyo VCC-P9575P 142

Sanyo VCC-PN9575P 142

Sanyo VCC-PT490 206

Sanyo VCC-PT490NA 206

Sanyo VCC-PT500 206

Sanyo VCC-PT500NA 206

Sanyo VCC-XZ200 206

Sanyo VCC-XZ200P 206

Sanyo VCC-XZ600P 206

Sanyo VCC-XZN600P 206

Sanyo VCC-ZM600P 206

Sanyo VCC-ZMN600P 206

Sanyo VDC-DP7584 142

Sanyo VDC-DP7585P 142

Sanyo VDC-DP9584 142

Sanyo VDC-DP9584N 142

Sanyo VDC-DP9585 142

Sanyo VDC-DPN9585P 142

Sanyo VSP-SV2000 56

Siemens CCIC1345 252

Siemens CCIS1345 252

Siemens CCIS1345-DN 252

Siemens CCIW1345 252

Sony SNC-CS3 54

Sony SNC-CS10 88

Sony SNC-CS11 88

Sony SNC-CS20 216

Sony SNC-CS50 125

Sony SNC-CM120 215

Sony SNC-DF40 88

Sony SNC-DF50 178

Sony SNC-DF70 88

Sony SNC-DF80 178

Sony SNC-DF85 178

Sony SNC-DM110 215

Sony SNC-DM160 215

Sony SNC-DS10 216

Sony SNC-DS60 216

Sony SNC-M1/SNC-M1W 102

Sony SNC-M3/SNC-M3W 102

Sony SNC-P1 88

Sony SNC-P5 98

Sony SNC-RX530 124

Sony SNC-RX550 124

Sony SNC-RX570 124

Sony SNC-RZ25 89

Sony SNC-RZ30 52

Sony SNC-RZ30/2 52

Sony SNC-RZ50 128

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



Sony SNC-Z20 53  
Sony SNC-VL10 51  
Sony SNT-V304 9  
Sony SNT-V501 82  
Sony SNT-V704 113  
Speco Technologies SIPB1/SIPB2 501  
Speco Technologies SIPB3/SIPB4 501  
Speco Technologies SIPMPT5 501  
Speco Technologies SIPSD10X 501  
StarDot NetCam XL 186  
StarDot NetCam SC 5 MP 186  
Toshiba IK-WB01A 115  
Toshiba IK-WB02A 114  
Toshiba IK-WB15A 115  
Toshiba IK-WB11A 59  
Toshiba IK-WB21A 115  
Toshiba IK-WD01A 508  
Toshiba IK-WR01A 114  
Toshiba Teli CI7010 181  
Toshiba Teli CI8110D 263  
Toshiba Teli CI8210D 250  
Toshiba Teli EJ7000 170  
UDP IPC1100 231  
UDP IPC3100 231  
UDP IPC3500 231  
UDP IPC4100 229  
UDP IPC4500 229  
UDP NVE12K 230  
UDP NVE40K 230  
UDP NVE100 232  
UDP NVE1000 233  
UDP NVE2000 234  
UDP NVE4000 230  
Universal driver 400  
Universal driver 16 Chnl. 401  
Vantage VIPC1100E 501  
Vantage VIPC1311EP 501  
Vantage VIPC1431EP 501  
Vantage VIPC3100E 501  
Vantage VIPC3211EP 501  
Vantage VIPC3311EP 501  
Vantage VIPC5300 501  
Vantage VIPC5320 501  
Vantage VIPC6510F 501  
Vantage VIPC6610F 501  
Vantage VIPC7100 series 501  
Vantage VIPC7200 series 501  
Vantage VIPC7300 series 501  
Vantage VIPS2120 501  
Vantage VIPS2310Q 501  
Vantage VIPS2410 506  
VCS VideoJet 10 96  
VCS VideoJet 400 94  
VCS VIP 10 96  
Veo Observer XT 32  
Verint Nextiva S1700e 103  
Verint Nextiva S1704e 135  
Verint Nextiva S1708e 111

This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



Verint Nextiva S1712e 163  
Verint Nextiva S1724e 164  
Verint Nextiva S1900e 103  
Verint Nextiva S1950e 103  
Verint Nextiva S1970e 103  
Verint Nextiva S2600e/S2610e 103  
Verint Nextiva S2700e 103  
Videology 20N758 184  
Videology 21N758 184  
Videology Server Board 189  
Vivotek FD6100 series 109  
Vivotek FD7131 331  
Vivotek FD7132 331  
Vivotek FD7141 331  
Vivotek FD7141V 331  
Vivotek IP2121 58  
Vivotek IP2122 58  
Vivotek IP3121 97  
Vivotek IP3122 97  
Vivotek IP3135 97  
Vivotek IP6124 109  
Vivotek IP7130 333  
Vivotek IP7131 155  
Vivotek IP7133 348  
Vivotek IP7134 348  
Vivotek IP7135 155  
Vivotek IP7137 155  
Vivotek IP7138 331  
Vivotek IP7139 331  
Vivotek IP7142 251  
Vivotek IP7151 251  
Vivotek IP7152 251  
Vivotek IP7153 251  
Vivotek IP7154 251  
Vivotek IP7160 251  
Vivotek IP7161 251  
Vivotek IP7251 347  
Vivotek IP7330 333  
Vivotek IZ7151 349  
Vivotek PT3124 107  
Vivotek PT7135 158  
Vivotek PT7137 158  
Vivotek PZ6122 110  
Vivotek PZ7111 332  
Vivotek PZ7112 332  
Vivotek PZ7121 332  
Vivotek PZ7122 332  
Vivotek PZ7131 332  
Vivotek PZ7132 332  
Vivotek PZ7151 349  
Vivotek PZ7152 349  
Vivotek SD6122V 110  
Vivotek SD7151 338  
Vivotek SD7313 338  
Vivotek SD7323 338  
Vivotek VS2101 58  
Vivotek VS2402 68  
Vivotek VS2403 0



This manual reflects the functionality of a full version of XProtect Enterprise, a comprehensive IP video management solution designed for medium and large-scale multi-server, multi-site installations. Although much of that functionality applies for your XProtect Go version too, some functionality may not apply in your version due to the differences listed on page 2.



Vivotek VS3100 97/107  
Vivotek VS3102 97/107  
Vivotek VS7100 251  
WebEye E10 50  
Xview AP-400/Linudix 81

Milestone Systems offices are located across the world. For details about office addresses, phone and fax numbers, visit [www.milestonesys.com](http://www.milestonesys.com).



The Open Platform Company